# Table of Contents

**Getting Started** ............................... 1  
  Introduction .................................. 2  
  Using the Manual ............................. 3  
  Installation .................................. 5  
  Game Setup .................................. 6  

**Welcome to Alpha Centauri** ................. 15  
  Getting Started .............................. 16  
  The Turn ..................................... 19  
  Getting Around ............................... 20  
  Active Units ................................ 22  
  Commlink .................................... 23  
  Turn Complete ............................... 23  
  World View .................................. 24  
  Year/Energy .................................. 24  
  Status View .................................. 25  
  Data MFD ..................................... 26  
  Mapping the Planet ......................... 26  
  Menus ........................................ 28  

**Planet** ...................................... 35  
  Resources .................................... 36  
  Native Life ................................... 39  
  Terrain ....................................... 41  
  How Terrain Affects Movement ............. 45  
  How Terrain Affects Combat ............... 45  
  Terraforming and Enhancements .......... 46  
  Resource Production Tables ............... 52  
  Ecological Risks ............................ 54  
  Random Natural Phenomena ............... 55  

**Colonizing the Planet** ....................... 57  
  Bases ......................................... 58  
  Base Control Screen ......................... 66  
  Base Control Screen/Section by Section ... 69  
  Production Readout ......................... 78  
  Units ......................................... 80  
  Movement ..................................... 90  
  Action Menu .................................. 92  
  Combat ....................................... 97  

**Controlling Society** ......................... 109  
  HQ Menu ..................................... 110  
  Economics ................................... 116  
  Technology .................................. 119  
  Diplomacy ................................... 123  
  Probe Teams ................................ 133  
  Social Engineering .......................... 136  
  Resigning .................................... 143  
  Winning the Game ............................ 143  
  Scoring ...................................... 145  

**Appendix 1. Notes and Tips** ................. 147  
  General Tips ................................ 148  

**Appendix 2. Tables** ......................... 151  
  Terraforming Enhancements ............... 152  
  Resource Production Tables ............... 153  
  Terrain Effects on Movement ............. 156  
  Terrain Effects on Combat ............... 157  
  Social Factors .............................. 158  
  Facilities ................................... 163  
  Secret Projects ............................. 170  
  Units ......................................... 175  
  Technology Tree ............................. 185  
  Citizens ..................................... 191  
  Planetary Council Proposals ............ 192  
  Free Facilities from Secret Projects .... 193  

**Appendix 3. Option Screens** ................. 195  
  Game Rules .................................. 197  
  Game Preferences ......................... 198  

**Appendix 4. Advanced Customization** .... 205  
  Scenario and Edit Map Menu Options ..... 206  
  Editing Text Files ......................... 207  

**Appendix 5. A New Sun** ..................... 209  
  The Centaur ................................ 210  
  Bright Suns ................................ 211  
  Proper Motion ................................ 211  
  Double Stars ................................ 212  
  Parallax ...................................... 213  
  Proxima Centauri ............................ 213  
  Luminosity .................................. 214  
  Mass .......................................... 214  
  Solar System Comparisons ............... 214  
  Habitable Planets ......................... 215  
  Planetography .............................. 216  
  Earth Comparisons ......................... 216  
  Atmospheric Composition ................. 218  
  Meteorology and Climatology .......... 219  
  Oceanography ................................ 220  
  Soil Composition ......................... 220  
  Ecology ..................................... 220  
  Native Life .................................. 222  
  Moons ........................................ 226  
  Other Planets ................................ 226  
  Suggested Reading ......................... 227  
  Journey to Centauri ......................... 230  
  Designer’s Notes ........................... 236  

**Credits** .................................... 245
CHAPTER 1
GETTING STARTED
INTRODUCTION

Welcome to FIRAXIS Games™ second offering, Sid Meier’s Alpha Centauri™. As with all games from FIRAXIS, fun and imagination rule, and we have tried to make a very complex topic accessible and interesting.

It is an ambitious game, addressing some very fundamental issues facing mankind as we approach the new millennium. What sort of technologies can we expect to deal with within the next couple of centuries? How will we use these technologies — for good or for evil? In fact, what ideologies will be paramount in the next millennium, and do these ideologies imply new and differing definitions for “good” and “evil”? What is the ultimate goal for humanity?

THE STORY

Soon after the new millenium begins, humankind’s oldest enemies — war, famine and disease — are winning the battle on planet Earth. The United Nations decides to attempt the mission that has been the dream of countless science fiction writers and fans for generations: the colonization of a New World, before it is too late. The establishment of a new outpost for mankind as an alternative to the decaying situation on our mother planet seems to be the last and best hope for the continued existence of mankind.

Code named “Unity,” the plan is simple. Send enough men, women and supplies to the earthlike planet, Chiron, orbiting the primary star in the Alpha Centauri system. Give them the seeds for planting a new society — technology, knowledge, and experts of every kind. Insure that the mission, U.N. sponsored, stays on track by carefully monitoring its progress from Earth. Then, when the time is right, and if the need still exists, begin shuttling others to the New World at Alpha Centauri.

But space travel is a difficult undertaking, even now. It is hard to reach our own moon. Even if we had the capacity to make it to a distant planet, will we
be able to bring the travelers back? Once firmly established on a distant world, will we be able to cooperate with one another there long enough to establish a new society that can attain the same levels and quality of life that we have achieved here after almost 5000 years of civilization? But the deteriorating conditions on Earth leave us little choice.

From the beginning, there are problems aboard the U.N. Starship Unity. An unexpected reactor malfunction damages the ship, waking the travelers early from cryo-sleep. It soon is evident that the accident has damaged the communications equipment and contact with Earth is lost, and cannot be re-established. The leadership of the mission is faced with the prospect of going it alone and soon begin to argue obstinately about the best way to proceed.

The game begins when the Unity Mission reaches Chiron. But, by this time, the mission has fallen into chaos. The most powerful leaders on board have built ideological factions and surrounded themselves with dedicated followers. It is clear that each faction has established its own agenda for the future of mankind and is desperately serious about carrying it through.

GOOD LUCK

We hope you will find a multitude of ways to solve the problems the Unity travelers face. There are nearly unlimited options and you can experiment relentlessly as you explore, discover, build and conquer. Please feel free to contact us to pass on criticism or praise, or just your point of view, at WWW.FIRAXIS.COM. Have fun and Good Luck.

— FIRAXIS Games

USING THE MANUAL

If this is the very first time you’ve ever played Sid Meier’s Alpha Centauri or any game like it, we recommend you do not sit down and read this book cover-to-cover before you start playing!

Instead, we strongly suggest you put down this book, start up the game, and play through the tutorial scenario provided. Also, check out the five “tours” provided in the game’s Help menu. These two resources are the easiest (and most fun) way to learn the basics of the game.
Tours. To get to the tours, start the game and select any options which look interesting (you’ll find out exactly what they do a little later) or just hit QUICK START. When the game loads for the first time, you will be automatically walked through several tours that show you the fundamentals of the game. To get back to the tours after the first game, (left-click) on the MENU tab on the left side of the screen, then (left-click) on HELP. The tours are at the bottom of the Help menu.

Tutorial Scenarios. To access the tutorial scenarios, start the game and select SCENARIO from the Main menu. When the Scenario menu appears, select PLAY SCENARIO. Open the folder 1EXPLORE and select the “Explore.sc” file. Upon successful completion of the “Explore” scenario, move on to the 2BUILD folder, and then to the 3CONQUER folder. When played in succession, these tutorials can help teach the Sid Meier’s Alpha Centauri basics in a fun and intuitive way. To access a list of scenario objectives and how to achieve them, (left-click) on the MENU tab on the left side of the screen, then (left-click) on the HQ menu, and select REVIEW SCENARIO OBJECTIVES.

Once you know the basics, this manual is provided to help you discover the many subtleties and details of Sid Meier’s Alpha Centauri. We hope you’ll be returning to these pages often while playing, to discover the exact purpose behind a game option, or the meaning of a term. Who knows? Maybe after you’ve been playing Sid Meier’s Alpha Centauri for awhile, you’ll come back and read this book cover-to-cover, just to make sure you’re not missing anything.

In addition to this manual, you will find the following materials, also included with your game, extremely useful:

- **Install Guide.** Installation, trouble shooting and customer support.

- **Tech Tree Chart.** The technologies that you discover as you progress, and their interrelationships. This chart also contains information about the terrain, vehicles, and world of Sid Meier’s Alpha Centauri.
This manual is divided into seven major sections:

- **Getting Started.** Loading and customizing your game.
- **Welcome to Alpha Centauri.** Movement, and the basic game interface.
- **Planet.** The ecology of the new world, and terraforming.
- **Colonizing Planet.** Building bases and expanding and defending your faction’s territory.
- **Controlling Society.** The finer points of economics, diplomacy, research and Social Engineering.
- **Appendices, listed below.**
- **A New Sun, Planetography and Journey to Centauri,** giving background details on the world of *Sid Meier’s Alpha Centauri.*

The appendices provide easy access to important information:

- **Notes and Tips.** Designer’s notes, and some strategy tips.
- **Tables.** Quick reference charts to the technologies, units, facilities and Secret Projects available in the game.
- **Option Screens.** Quick reference listing of configurable options to customize gameplay.
- **Advanced Customization.** Advanced methods for customizing the game.
- **Index.** A complete listing of where to find details on all key topics in the game.

**INSTALLATION**

Installation, troubleshooting and customer support are all covered in the Install Guide.
GAME SETUP

Sid Meier’s Alpha Centauri allows a wide range of player customization options both before and during play.

MAIN (STARTING) MENU

This is the first thing you see upon starting Sid Meier’s Alpha Centauri.

You can quit the game from the Main menu with [Esc]. If you’re not on the Main menu, [Esc] takes you back to your previous screen. On all menu screens, [Esc] takes you back one level.

START GAME

Starts a new game. This selection opens the Map Selection menu (see Map Selection menu, facing page).

QUICK START

This option drops you directly into a new game configured exactly like the last game you played (including faction choice). If you use Quick Start before playing any other games, it drops you into a world of average size, with all defaults on, playing the Gaian faction on the easiest difficulty level.

SCENARIO

Scenarios are specific challenges designed to test your playing skill to the maximum. The exceptions are the Tutorial Scenarios, specially designed to teach new players the basics.
LOAD GAME
Allows you to load a previously saved game. You can load both automatic saves (see Automatic Saves, p. 30) and named saves (see Save Game, p. 29).
This option opens your Saves directory.

MULTIPLAYER
Use this to set up a multiplayer game. See Multiplayer, in the Install Guide, for detailed instructions.

VIEW CREDITS
Reveals the game’s creators.

EXIT GAME
This option quits the game and returns you to Windows®.

MAP SELECTION MENU
In this menu you decide what kind of new game you wish to start.

MAKE RANDOM MAP
Allows you to start a new game, making only a few basic choices—Size of Planet, Difficulty Level, Game Rules and Faction. (See Customized Planets, next page, for details of these options.)

CUSTOMIZE RANDOM MAP
Allows you to customize a number of parameters of your new world before you start play. See Customized Planets, next page, for details.
THE MAP OF PLANET
This map is the “official” map of Planet. It’s always the same.

HUGE MAP OF PLANET
This is a large version of the map of Planet.

LOAD MAP FILE
This allows you to load a custom map that you’ve saved out as a map file.

CUSTOMIZED PLANETS
When you elect to play on a random or customized random map game, you’re given a series of choices that allow you to shape the environment of your new world.

A fully customized planet allows you to control exactly what kind of game experience you want. If your primary interest is combat and tactics, choose a small planet with plentiful native life, giving you lots of opportunity to fight off native threats and other factions. If you’re more interested in peaceful, long-term development, choose a huge planet and rare native life. If you want a difficult terraforming challenge, choose a mountainous, dry world, but if you want a more inviting environment for your people, choose rolling terrain and lots of rainfall. If you like building and managing a navy, go for extensive ocean coverage, or if you prefer to work on land, choose smaller oceans.

At any time in the customization process you can return to the Select Size of Planet menu by hitting [Esc].
SIZE
There are five options: Tiny, Small, Standard, Large and Huge. The bigger the world, the longer you’ll probably play before encountering any of the other factions.

From this screen, you can also load any custom map files you may have saved. The Load Map File option opens your map file directory.

OCEAN COVERAGE
 Allows you to select how much of the world is under water. The three options are 30-50%, 50-70%, and 70-90%. The more ocean, the greater the necessity for a navy and the fewer opportunities to expand your faction on land.

EROSIVE FORCES
 Allows you to choose between Strong (rolling and flat terrain), Average (hilly terrain), and Weak (rough, mountainous terrain). In general, flat terrain is easier to settle and terraform. Rougher surfaces are harder to terraform, but offer an abundance of mineral resources.

NATIVE LIFE FORMS
 Allows you to select the frequency of Planet’s native life-forms, notably mind worms (see Fauna, p. 40) and xenofungus (see Flora, p. 39). Choices are Rare, Average and Abundant. The fewer native life forms, the easier the going, particularly early in the game.

CLOUD COVER
 The choices are Sparse (light rainfall), Average, and Dense (heavy rainfall). The more rainfall, the more nutrients available to feed and expand your bases.
DIFFICULTY

There are six levels of difficulty. The higher the difficulty, the smarter and more aggressive your opponents, and the tougher it is to establish and expand your faction. Difficulty levels, from easiest to hardest, are: Citizen (novice), Specialist, Talent, Librarian, Thinker, and Transcend (expert).

GAME RULES

These advanced gameplay options are described in detail under Game Rules, p. 197.

FACTION

There are seven factions of refugees from the disastrous destruction of the U.N. Starship Unity. This is where you select the one that you wish to lead.

- CUSTOM NAME allows you to change the name of the faction (if, for example, your faction simply must be the Cheeseheads). This option also allows you to customize the terms used to address and describe your faction in diplomatic interactions.

- HELP button displays a summary of the faction’s character and its special abilities (and handicaps).

- LOAD lets you load a previously created faction configuration.

- OK accepts your choice and starts the game.

- CANCEL returns to the Main menu.

After you select a faction, you get a window that allows you to change the name and gender of your faction leader (for example, Norma of the Cheeseheads), if you wish, after which the game begins.

See Factions, facing page, for information about the seven factions themselves.
The human factions of Planet are not divided by race, language or place of ancestral origin. Instead, each faction is guided by the vision of its leader. These visions, in turn, give each faction a unique set of advantages and disadvantages. By comparing the strengths of your faction to the parameters of a customized planet, you can either give yourself an edge against the other factions, or set yourself a unique challenge to overcome.

You’re likely to find the game more enjoyable if you pick a faction you can empathize with (even if you don’t necessarily agree with everything they profess).

GAIA’S STEPDAUGHTERS (LED BY LADY DEIRDRE SKYE)

The Gaians are determined not to repeat the environmental mistakes of old Earth. They seek to live at peace with Planet. They start out with the Centauri Ecology technology and advanced abilities to interact with the native life, including the ability to move freely through xenofungus squares and gather extra nutrients from fungus. Their empathy with Planet gives them the ability to place ravaging wild mind worms directly under their control. Their experience with recycling systems makes their bases more efficient, but their pacifist leanings undermine the
abilities of their military units, and they resent police control in times of crisis. Because of negative environmental consequences, the Gaians can not make the “Free Market Economics” social choice (see Society Window, p. 136).

HUMAN HIVE (LED BY CHAIRMAN SHENG-JI YANG)

This faction is ruled under harsh collectivist/authoritarian principles. The good of the individual is totally subordinate to the state. They are isolationist, and militaristic. The Hive begins with the Doctrine: Loyalty technology. Their bases are built underground, giving them the equivalent of a pre-installed Perimeter Defense facility. Their population growth and industrial development are above average, but their economy tends to lag behind others. The Hive can not make the “Democratic” social choice (see Society Window, p. 136).

UNIVERSITY OF PLANET (LED BY ACADEMICIAN PROKHOR ZAKHAROV)

The University is completely dedicated to research and the free exchange of information. They are rumored to sometimes put the pursuit of knowledge ahead of ethics. They start the game with the Information Networks technology and one additional bonus technology. Each University base receives a free Network Node when founded. The University’s research progresses quickly, but their open-access philosophy makes them susceptible to attacks by covert “Probe Teams,” while their callous elitism can easily lead to unrest among the workers. The University can not make the “Fundamentalist” social choice (see Society Window, p. 136).

MORGAN INDUSTRIES (LED BY CEO NWABUDIKE MORGAN)

The Morganites are organized along corporate lines, and dedicated to laissez-faire capitalist economic principles. They start the game with 100 energy credits and the Industrial Base technology, and receive a bonus to all income from commerce between factions. Morganites have expensive tastes, making it difficult for them to support units in the field, and requiring them to build Hab Complex facilities before the population of any of their bases can exceed four citizens. The Morganites can not make the “Planned Economics” social choice (see Society Window, p. 136).
SPARTAN FEDERATION (LED BY COLONEL CORAZON SANTIAGO)

The Spartans are paramilitary survivalists. They believe in both a right and a duty to keep and bear arms. The Spartans start the game with the Doctrine: Mobility technology and a fast scout rover vehicle, and they do not have to pay extra to develop prototypes of new units. Morale of their units is exceptionally high, and their citizens accept strict police control as a necessity, but their extravagant military needs weigh down industrial operations. The Spartans cannot make the “Wealth” social choice (See Society Window, p. 136).

THE LORD’S BELIEVERS (LED BY SISTER MIRIAM GODWINSON)

The Believers seek a life of prayer and religious worship. Because of the strength of their convictions, they get a bonus when attacking their enemies. They start the game with the Social Psych technology. The Believers are resistant to probe brainwashing, but their suspicion of secular science retards their research efforts, and their belief that Planet is their promised land sometimes interferes with their ecological sensitivity. The Believers cannot make the “Knowledge” social choice (see Society Window, p. 136).

THE PEACEKEEPING FORCES (LED BY COMMISSIONER PRAVIN LAL)

The Peacekeepers exist to support the humanitarian principles of the United Nations of Earth, the organization that originally commissioned the Unity expedition to Alpha Centauri. They start the game with the Biogenetics technology. The idealism of this faction attracts an intellectual elite, but their society possesses a tendency towards bureaucratic inefficiency. Their bases can exceed normal population limits by 2. Due to his experience with parliamentary maneuvering, Lal’s vote counts double when the Planetary Council is convened for election of a Planetary Governor or Supreme Leader. The Peacekeepers cannot make the “Police State” social choice (see Society Window, p. 136).
CHAPTER 2

WELCOME TO ALPHA CENTAURI
WELCOME TO ALPHA CENTAURI

Your new home in the Alpha Centauri system is officially called Chiron, but most of the new inhabitants refer to it as Planet. In cosmic terms, Earth and Planet are two worlds similar enough to be considered practically identical. But for human beings, the product of millions of years of earth-specific evolution, Planet is a strange, alien and frightening place. Your first task, upon arrival on this new world, is figuring out the ground rules how the whole system of Planet works together, and how your faction can make itself profitably a part of that system.

GETTING STARTED

A whole new world is a big place, and Sid Meier’s Alpha Centauri is a big game. The first settlers on Planet are awed by the infinite possibilities that stretch before them, and the first time you open the game, you might find yourself a bit over-awed by all the choices you have (particularly if you’ve never played any similar simulations before). This section is a quick guide to what you can expect when you first start to play, and some of the basic and necessary actions you need to take to get yourself established. All the concepts and actions mentioned below are covered in much greater detail later in this book.

FOLLOWING PLANETFALL

When your faction first makes planetfall, you always have at least one mobile unit ready for action. Send this unit out to explore the immediate vicinity of your base (you can move your unit with the eight arrow keys on the numeric keypad: just press the key corresponding to the direction you want to go). Try to explore at least five or six squares out from the base in all directions, then pick a direction and head out, or find a coastline and follow it. You’re looking for inviting places to establish new bases (remember, green is good — look for green squares near rivers or coastlines), and for the supply pods scattered by the Unity just before its destruction (but be careful—the Unity pods can contain valuable gifts, but they can also unleash danger). Watch out for mind worm boils—the dangerous native life-forms of Planet. Be prepared to fight or
run when you see mind worms (you can attack by attempting to move into their square). Ultimately, you’ll want to make contact with the units or bases of the other human factions.

**RESEARCHING TECHNOLOGY**

New technologies drive your survival and expansion on Planet, giving you access to new weapons, base facilities, and Secret Projects. As soon as your first base is established, your faction immediately begins scientific research. You don’t have to do anything to start researching, it just happens. Every few turns your scientists announce a new breakthrough, and ask you to set priorities to guide your next research effort. For more information on how to maximize your technological advances, see Technology, p. 119.

**EXPANDING YOUR EMPIRE**

Each of your bases is constantly building a new unit or base facility. You can decide where a base should direct its industrial efforts. To do so, press on a base to open the Base Control Screen. In the lower left corner of that screen is a window showing that base’s current build orders. Press on the Change button to get the Production Readout, which shows everything your base can build (at the start of the game, this might be just two or three objects). At the start of the game you’ll want to concentrate on units. First, build a military unit to guard the base. When it’s completed, use to order that unit to remain in the base, on guard. If you wish, you may order the base governor to take over production if you press one of the “Governor” buttons at the top of the Base Control screen (see Governor, p. 69).

As soon as the “former” (terraforming) unit becomes available (with the discovery of Centauri Ecology), build one and send it out to terraform the landscape. Move the former out of your base and have it build farms (F), roads (R), and solar collectors (S). If the terrain is harsh (a brown square with no green), plant forests (Shift F). If the terrain is rough (lots of grey blobs in the square) drill mines (M). You can also automate a former by pressing (Shift A); it immediately begins building terrain enhancements as the former commander sees fit.
You’ll also want to build some extra colony pods to establish new bases. When a pod is ready, send it out to an inviting green square at least three or four squares away from any other base (and on a river or a coast if possible). B builds a new base on that square.

As your faction discovers new technology, you gain an ever wider variety of build options to choose from. Once you have a defensive unit and a former, and have sent out a colony pod from a base, you’ll probably want to start improving the base itself by building facilities. Particularly useful facilities for new bases in the early part of the game include the Network Node, Perimeter Defense, Children’s Creche, Recycling Tanks and Recreation Commons.

Eventually, when you feel one of your bases is well established, you may want to commit it to building a Secret Project. These massive works take a long time to build but yield lasting benefits to your entire faction.

**DIPLOMACY**

Inevitably, you come into contact with one of the other factions from the Unity. When this happens, you’ll usually get a message that the leader of the faction wishes to speak to you, via your commlinks. It’s usually a good idea to talk to another leader when given the opportunity. Leaders may offer to trade technologies (often a good idea), or offer you a treaty, or even an alliance (a very good idea, unless you’re itching for a fight). On the other hand, they might threaten you or even try to extort energy (the currency of Planet) or technology from you. Giving in to such demands can be humbling, but is sometimes better than the alternative (a fight you may not be ready for). Sometimes they want to borrow energy credits (a good deal in the long run, unless you’re going to need the energy you’re loaning away in the immediate future).

**FACTIONAL STRIFE**

Unfortunately, diplomacy can’t solve all problems. Sooner or later, you’ll have to prepare your faction for armed conflict. Even if your intentions are peaceful, you’ll need a standing army, to respond quickly in case of unprovoked
aggression. (Keep such defensive forces small—no more than two units per base in the years immediately after Planetfall. Otherwise they'll become expensive to maintain, and rapidly become obsolete.)

If you prefer the conqueror's role, you can put your whole faction on a military footing, building multiple units per base for a massive invasion force. Obviously, you probably shouldn't invest too much time and resources into an operation until you've encountered the enemy and know where they're located.

**THE TURN**

*Sid Meier's Alpha Centauri* is a turn-based game. Each turn corresponds to one Chiron year. Mission Year 2100, Planetfall, is the first Chiron year.

Each turn follows the same pattern.

1. **Planet & Enemy Faction move.** All native and enemy units make their moves (including attacks). You see any such movements that fall within the limits of your sensors. The leaders of the other factions may contact you.

2. **Faction Update.** You are advised of any completed enhancements, research or units. (You can customize your preferences for updates; see *Warning Preferences*, p.199.) You may set a new goal for each base when a project is completed, or you may use the defaults. As time progresses, you are offered opportunities to upgrade units, and may receive updates of your progress at unraveling the secrets of this new world.

3. **Player Move.** You (and all other player-controlled factions, in multiplayer games) may move units at this time. You are taken, in turn, to each unit that is:
   - not “holding” in a defensive position, or “asleep” within a transport unit.
   - not already engaged in a multi-turn action.

During this time, you may also freely change your preferences, or change orders to bases or any units (whether or not they’re already engaged in orders), contact other faction leaders, inspect visible portions of the map, and review all available data.
GETTING AROUND

The first things you have to learn, in order to establish your faction, are how to interpret the map and how to move around.

The main map, which occupies the top two-thirds of the screen, is your playing surface. At Planetfall (when your faction first arrives on Planet, and when the game begins), the vast bulk of the map is either indistinct or totally black (depending on how you set the Unity Survey option; see Game Rules, p. 197). You have to move units around and explore to find out exactly what your surroundings are.

The simplest way to move a unit is with the numeric keypad.

The direction in which the keypad arrow points corresponds directly to the direction the unit moves, so that 8 on the numeric keypad moves you one square to the north, while 3 moves you one square to the southeast.

It is also possible to set units to undertake longer, multi-turn journeys without further orders, or even to have them decide for themselves what actions to take. These options are described under the Action Menu (p. 92).

Continual movement [Ctrl]+arrow key

If you want a unit to move continually in a single direction, use this command. The unit continues in the specified direction until it can no longer proceed, due to coastlines or enemy units. The unit’s commander may route around small obstacles like fungus and small bodies of water.
MOUSE MOVEMENT

If you’re sending a unit on a long journey, and you don’t want to hit an arrow key for every square of the distance, you can set a destination using the mouse: Just ☞ (left-click) on the unit, drag to its destination, then release.

The unit figures the most direct path to your destination, automatically routing around obstacles like small bodies of water and fungal areas.

Waypoints. There may be times when you don’t want a unit to take the most direct route to its final destination (for example, if a route would take you through hostile territory). In those cases you can use waypoints. To set a waypoint, ☞-and-drag to the first waypoint square, [Spacebar] while holding the click, then drag to the next waypoint or to your final destination. A waypoint is set on that square—the unit goes to the waypoint, then on to the next waypoint (if there is another one) or its final destination. A unit will normally follow the path shown on the screen when its orders are given, but it may deviate somewhat based upon the tactical situation at the time it makes the actual move. It always traverses the waypoints in the order given. You can insert up to three waypoints on a route, including the destination.

EXAMINING THE MAP

The main map is scrollable. ☞ (left-click) on any square to center the map on that square. You can also scroll the map in the indicated direction by moving your mouse cursor to the edge of the screen (unless you choose to disable this option).

- If you have a unit in that square, ☞ also moves your cursor to that square and activates the unit (see Active Units, p. 22). If you have multiple units in a square, you choose which unit to activate.

- If you have a base in the square, ☞ opens the Base Control Screen (see pg. 66).

☞ (right-click) on a square to open a window containing many of the most commonly used commands. These commands are fully described under Action Menu, p. 92.
FOG OF WAR

On any given turn playing with the default game options, there are three types of terrain visible on the map.

**Black** squares are squares you have not mapped yet. (If you have the Unity Survey option turned on, these are not black, but you won’t be able to see any details of the square’s terrain, other than whether it’s land or sea).

**Dim** squares are those you have already mapped, but which are not currently observed by any of your sensors (either from units or bases).

**Bright** squares are those you’ve mapped, and which are currently monitored by your sensors. Most units can observe only adjacent squares. All bases and your units with Deep Radar (a unit special ability) can observe out to two squares away.

**ACTIVE UNITS**

During a turn, each of your units not currently under orders will become active and remain so until you either give it an order or activate a different unit. Active units are shown by a marker or by flashing, depending on the game options you have selected. A unit that has been skipped during your turn because you chose to activate a different unit will re-activate before the end of your turn as a reminder that it still needs instructions. If you are viewing the map, press \( V \) to auto-select the next active unit.
CHAPTER 2

COMMLINK

Although it may take awhile to find them, eventually you’ll need to communicate with other faction leaders. The commlink system is your means of communication and your tool for trade and diplomacy.

The Commlink button is located on the right edge of your screen.

Click on this tab or press F12 to open the Commlink menu which displays the names of each of the opposing faction leaders along with your current diplomatic status with that faction (Vendetta, Truce, Treaty, Pact; see Diplomatic Relations, p. 129). Click on a name to contact that leader (see Diplomatic Contact, p. 127).

A final option, COUNCIL, cannot be used until you have the commlink frequencies for all other leaders. It allows you to convene the Planetary Council. (See Planetary Council, p. 132.)

TURN COMPLETE

This button, just below the Commlink tab, allows you to disregard any remaining actions and end the turn (if you have actions left in the turn, you are prompted to confirm your choice). This button flashes when all your units have received orders for the current turn.
WORLD VIEW

The World View map is in the lower right corner of your screen. It displays the world as it is currently known to your faction.

There are two options for viewing your World View map, selected via the buttons beneath the map:

- **World Map** (default view). Displays the outline of the land areas and all known cities by the color of their faction. Double-click an area in the World Map to zoom to the Detail Map (see below).

- **Detail Map**. Displays a close-up of the terrain, so you can keep your eye on potential trouble spots. Double-click an area in the Detail Map to take you back to the World Map (see above).

You can scroll around either view—on any terrain on the map. The map re-centers where you clicked. on the World View in either mode to bring up a menu of options for changing the view.

YEAR/ENERGY

At the bottom of the World View is a readout line showing the current year and your faction’s current energy reserves (see Base Management: The Essentials, p. 58).
**STATUS VIEW**

This display comprises the three windows in the lower left corner of the screen. It displays all the essential information about both the active unit and the active square.

The top left window displays information about the active unit or base, if any, including:

- Picture (with status bar)
- Type
- Stats (see Units, p. 64)
- Morale Level (see Morale/Lifecycle, p. 87)
- Supporting Base
- Move Remaining
- Current Orders (if any) and time to completion (if a terraforming project is underway)
- Base build orders

The top right window displays information about the current square, including:

- Elevation
• Terrain Type (see Resources, p. 36)
• Any Enhancements (see Terraforming and Enhancements, p. 46)
• Coordinates (see Mapping Planet, below)

Press on the window to show the number of resources produced by that square.

The long window at the bottom of the screen displays a picture of each unit or base stacked in the current square. Place the cursor over an item to view its data. Press on a picture to make a unit the active unit. Press on a base to zoom to the Base Control Screen.

DATA MFD

This is the window located in the lower center of your screen. It’s a repository for general information about your faction and current events.

If you press on the M button (for “messages”), the Data MFD displays the most recent messages generated by the game, with the oldest at the top.

If you press on the I button (for “information”), the Data MFD displays a continuously cycling series of screens displaying important information about your faction and its status among the other factions.

MAPPING PLANET

When you first arrive on Planet, you’ll have no idea where you are, where the other factions are, or indeed what might lie over the horizon. You’ll have to begin the fascinating process of exploring Planet, and as you progress the world map is unveiled.

The map of Planet is a spherical surface projected onto a rectangular image. This means, in realistic terms, that the squares at the top and bottom of the map (near the poles) represent much smaller areas than the squares in the middle (near the equator). In game terms, however, there’s no difference—a square is a square. Understanding the projection, however, does make it easier to
understand that the long stretches of rough land at the top and bottom of the screen represent the edge of Planet’s uninhabitable polar regions.

MAP COORDINATES
Map coordinates are numbered starting from (0, 0), with the vertical axis first. The vertical axis is numbered from the top of the map to the bottom, and the horizontal is numbered from left to right, starting at the point where the World View (see World View, p. 24) wraps. Thus (14, 22) would be nearer the upper left corner of the World View, while (101, 77) would be much lower and farther to the right.

ARCHIPELAGOES
Some land squares are connected by a thin line between their diagonal corners, with water squares on either side of this line. These squares are connected by an archipelago of small islands, and these intersections can be crossed both by sea units (from one water square to the other), and by land units (along the archipelago).
Along the left side of your screen is a tab labeled MENU. On the tab, and a list of nine sub-menus appears.

- Game (see Game Menu, next page)
- HQ (see HQ Menu, p. 110)
- Network (see Install Guide)
- Map (see Map Menu, p. 32)
- Action (see Action Menu, p. 92)
- Terraform (see Terraform Menu, p. 46)
- Scenario (see Scenario and Edit Map Menus, p. 206)
- Edit Map (see Scenario and Edit Map Menus, p. 206)
- Help (see Help Menu, p. 31)

From these menus, you can access most of the commands, options and preferences available in the game. Some of the options listed may not appear, either because you have “Simple menus” toggled on (see Game Menu, below) or because you cannot carry out a particular order.
GAME MENU

This menu controls the basic functions of the game. There are six preference options, plus a toggle for detailed and simple menu options. The six preference options are:

- Simple\Detailed menu toggle
- Preferences
- Warning Preferences
- Advanced Preferences
- Automation Preferences
- Audio/Visual Preferences
- Map Display Preferences

The various preference menus are discussed in detail in Appendix 3, beginning on p. 196. The Simple\Detailed menu toggle controls the level of detail in your Map, Action and Terraform menus. Simple menus show only the basic commands needed to play the game. Detailed menus offer many functions for advanced users.

SAVE GAME

Allows you to create a permanent, named saved game (as opposed to autosaves—see Automatic Saves, p. 30).

When you select this option you are prompted to provide a name for your saved game.

LOAD GAME

Allows you to select a saved game (either named or autosaved) to replace the current game.
RESIGN

A more involved version of the Quit option, Resign totals up your score and shows a replay of the entire game (a graphical display of each faction’s advances and losses) before quitting.

START NEW GAME

Quits the current game and returns you to the Start Game menus.

QUIT

Simply closes the game and returns you to the Windows desktop. Progress is saved up through the end of the last complete turn. If you have selected the “Iron Man” option during game setup, your progress will be saved from the moment you quit.

AUTOMATIC SAVES

The game saves itself between each turn. At any given time you can reload the game as it was 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 10, 20 and 30 turns ago. These saves can all be accessed through the Load Game options at startup or from the Game menu. Automatic saves are stored in the AUTO subdirectory of your SAVES directory.

The “Iron Man” option (see Game Rules, p. 197) turns off automatic saves, except when quitting a game, for those who think autosaves make it too easy to go back and undo embarrassing mistakes. If you manually save an Iron Man game, you exit the game.
HELP MENU

This menu opens a comprehensive database of in-depth information about every aspect of the rules, mechanics and background of *Sid Meier’s Alpha Centauri*.

The first options in the Help menu open to directories of information about specific aspects of the game, including:

- Index
- General Concepts
- Advanced Concepts
- Technologies
- Base Facilities
- Secret Projects
- Social Engineering
- Factions
- Basic Unit Types
- Chassis Types
- Weapon Types
- Defense Types
- Reactor Types
- Special Abilities

Of special interest to new players are the five “Tours” at the bottom of the menu. These use your current game to walk you through some of the most important aspects of game play, including:

- Interface Tour
- Terraforming Tour
- Base Control Tour
- Social Engineering Tour
- Design Workshop Tour
- Drone Riot Details
- About *Sid Meier’s Alpha Centauri* (credits)
- Show Version Number
MAP MENU

The Map menu allows you to control how the game displays the main map. Note that if you have the Simple menu option selected (see Game Menu, p. 29), you may not get all of these choices.

Move Units (or View Map)  V

Toggles your main map between View Map Mode and Move Units mode. In Move Units mode you automatically are taken to your current active unit. If you lose track of where you left off your turn while moving around the map, pressing  V  once or twice returns you to your active unit. In View Map mode you can move freely about the map, examining all visible features. You can move your cursor around the map just as you would a unit, using the numerical keypad or the mouse.

Zoom In  Z

Moves you “closer” to the map’s surface, allowing you to view a smaller area at greater detail.

Zoom Out  X

Moves you “further” from the map’s surface, allowing you to view a larger area at less detail.

Standard Zoom In  Shift Z

Takes you to a median zoom level that should be comfortable for playing.

Standard Zoom Out  Shift X

Takes you to a median zoom level somewhat “further out” than Standard Zoom In, but still comfortable for playing.

Full Zoom In  Ctrl Z

Zooms you in as far as possible.

Full Zoom Out  Ctrl X

Zooms you out as far as possible.
Toggle Flattened Terrain \texttt{Ctrl} \texttt{Shift} \texttt{X}

Toggles the map’s topographic perspective on or off, allowing you to see mountain and valley squares from either 2- or 3-D perspective.

Toggle Map Grid \texttt{Ctrl} \texttt{G}

Toggles the map grid (faint gray lines separating individual squares).

Toggle Base Grid \texttt{Ctrl} \texttt{Shift} \texttt{G}

Toggles a red border that marks the “production radius” of bases in the game (see Working the Land, p. 60).

Show Autoforward Routes \texttt{Ctrl} \texttt{Shift} \texttt{B}

Autoforward routes automatically move units from one base to another (see Action Menu, p. 46). This toggle shows the routes you have implemented.

Show Patrol Orders \texttt{Shift} \texttt{P}

Toggles a dotted green line along the routes of your patrolling units (see Action Menu, p. 46).

Terrain Survey \texttt{T}

Changes all the bases, units, and terrain features on the map between invisible and visible, allowing you to view the terrain without obstruction. Selecting this option consecutive times removes additional terrain features.

Hide/Show Names & Production \texttt{Ctrl} \texttt{N}

Cycles the name and current production orders displayed beneath each base. This command cycles between no names, names only, and names and production orders.

Name Landmark \texttt{Shift} \texttt{N}

Allows you to assign a name to a given region. Select the square to be named and select this option. You are prompted to enter a name. The name is applied to the target square and its adjacent squares.
Erase Landmark  **Ctrl**[Shift]**N**

Deletes the name of a previously named region. Place the cursor in any square within the named region and **N** this option. You are prompted to confirm your choice.

Locate Base  **Ctrl**[B]

Presents you with a list of all your current bases. **B** on one to display its position on the World Map (see World View, p. 24). This list also contains several option buttons.

- **Sort: Name** Sorts your bases alphabetically by name (this is the default).
- **Sort: Size** Sorts your bases from largest to smallest.
- **Sort: Dist** Sorts your bases from nearest to farthest from the current active square.
- **Zoom** Opens the Base Control Screen (see p. 66) for the selected base.
- **OK** Saves the current sort preference as the default and closes the screen.
- **Cancel** Closes the screen.

Previous Cursor Position  **Bsp**

Cycles you backwards through your recent cursor positions.

Next Cursor Position  **Shift**[Bsp]

Cycles you forwards through your recent cursor positions (only functional if you have already cycled back one or more steps).

Center Screen  **C**

Centers the screen on your cursor position.
Before you can turn your attention to the old terrestrial games of politics and warfare, you must first focus on the serious business of surviving and thriving on a strange world. Unlike the human factions, Planet cannot be conquered, dominated or negotiated with, but it can be worked with to ensure the survival and prosperity of your people.

**RESOURCES**

Resources are the essential elements which you extract from your surroundings to support and expand your faction. There are three types of resource—nutrients, which support your population and allow your bases to grow in size; minerals, which allow you to build units and facilities; and energy, the currency of Planet.

To obtain the resources from any given square, it must be inside your territory (see *Working the Land*, p. 60), inside the production radius of a base (within a two-square radius, excluding diagonals), and that base must assign a unit of its population to work that square (see *Working the Land*, p. 60). Unworked squares yield no resources, regardless of their fertility.

Your ability to exploit territory is limited by your technology. When you first arrive on Planet, you are generally unable to recover more than two of any one resource per turn (see *Resource Production Tables*, p. 52). As you acquire new technologies, your production capacity expands until you are fully able to exploit the resource potential of every square in a base’s production radius.

**NUTRIENTS (RAINFALL)**

For your faction to increase, you must be able to extract healthy nutrients from the alien ecosystem of Planet. The more nutrients a base produces, the faster and larger it can grow. Rainfall directly determines the amount of nutrients a square can produce.
There are three levels of rainfall on Planet—arid, moist and rainy. Rainy squares show as green on the map, and are usually the best places to establish new bases. Arid squares show up as brown, and moist squares combine green and brown. When scouting for new settlements, always remember, “Green is good.”

Without any modifiers (such as special resources, enhancements, xenofungus, monoliths and others, all detailed below), an arid square produces no nutrients, a moist square produces 1 nutrient per turn, and a rainy square produces 2 nutrients. Rocky squares (see Minerals, p. 37) do not produce nutrients regardless of rainfall.

Moist and rainy squares are excellent places to build farms to enhance nutrient production. The amount of nutrients any given square can produce is limited until the discovery of Gene Splicing.

MINERALS (ROCKINESS)

Mineral production controls the rate at which your bases improve, as well as your ability to produce military, transport and terraforming units. Existing units may also require a certain amount of mineral raw materials for support.

The rockier a square, the more minerals it produces. There are three levels of rockiness—flat, rolling and rocky. Without any modifiers (such as special resources, enhancements, xenofungus, monoliths and others, all detailed below), a flat square produces no minerals, while a rolling or rocky square produces 1 mineral per turn.

Bases cannot be established in rocky squares, nor can farms be started there. They are, however, excellent places for mines. For more details, see Terraform Menu, p. 46.

The amount of minerals any given square can produce is limited until the discovery of Ecological Engineering.
ENERGY (ELEVATION)

A solar collector must be built in a square to harvest its energy from elevation. Energy allows you to sustain your bases in working order. Even more importantly, though, it is the effective currency of the human factions of Planet.

The energy you collect is allocated to three different areas: Economy, Labs and Psych. Energy allocated to Economy is used to maintain base facilities; any excess is placed in the energy reserve. Your faction’s economic power is measured by its energy reserves. These reserves are saved in the form of “energy credits,” and are used for maintaining base facilities, commerce and energy payments between factions. Energy from the energy reserves may also be invested in mineral production to hurry projects to completion (see Build Orders, p. 67). Energy allocated to Labs speeds research into new technologies (see Energy Allocation, p. 117). Energy allocated to Psych helps maintain order in your bases (see Energy Allocation, p. 117).

Squares with solar collectors produce 1 energy per level of elevation. There are four levels of elevation above sea level on the Planet—0 to 1,000 meters above sea level, 1,000 to 2,000 meters, 2,000 to 3,000 meters, and above 3,000 meters. For example, a solar collector built in a square at 1025 m would produce 2 energy each turn. You can find the elevation of a square by checking it in the Status View (p. 25). You can also see elevations and depressions on the map.

The amount of energy any given square can produce is limited until the discovery of Environmental Economics.

CLIMATE AND ELEVATION

The rainfall of a given region is partly determined by the elevation of the surrounding terrain. On Planet, the prevailing winds always blow from west to east. This means that the westward exposure of a ridge or mountainside catches more airborne moisture—the effective rainfall increases on that side. However, little moisture reaches the eastward slope, so the rainfall decreases on that side. A great mountain range may be lush and green on the western side, but will be arid desert on the eastern side.
You can learn to exploit this pattern by raising and lowering terrain with your former units to create favorable rainfall conditions for yourself or unfavorable rainfall for an opponent (see Terraform Menu, p. 46).

**NATIVE LIFE**

Planet has been teeming with life since eons before the arrival of humanity. Individual specimens of Planet’s indigenous species seem simpler than analogous Earth life, but appearances can be deceiving. Much of Planet’s plant and animal life is tied together in a grand symbiotic relationship, far more intricate than any comparable system on Earth. Truly the whole is greater than the sum of its parts. For more information on the native ecology of Planet, see Planetography, p. 216.

**FLORA**

Though there are many different species of plant life, the dominant form is the crimson, fantastically shaped xenofungus (or “fungus”), which covers vast tracts of the surface. Its near cousin, sea fungus, is equally ubiquitous in Planet’s oceans and seas.

Fungus squares (squares with fungus in them) can not be used for bases, tend to spawn mind worm boils (see Fauna, p. 40), and they are difficult to move through. However they do have one useful property—a ground or sea unit can hide in a fungus or sea fungus square, and is invisible to detection by all other factions unless they actually try to move a unit into the square or have sensor arrays nearby (see Terraform Menu, p. 46). Also, units attacked while in fungus get a defensive bonus, unless the attacking unit is itself native life (either human-bred or “wild;” see Fauna, p. 40), in which case the attacking unit gets an offensive bonus.

As your knowledge of Planet expands, you discover ways to extract useful resources from fungus squares (see Resource Production Table, p. 52). You can also overcome many of the inconveniences of fungus squares by enhancing your Planet rating through Social Engineering (see Social Factors, p. 141), allowing easier movement through fungus.
Bases and enhancements cannot be built on xenofungus squares, but the resources of the fungus itself can be harvested. As your terraforming technology improves, you acquire the ability to clear, and even to cultivate xenofungus. Fungus can be planted to create defensive barriers, or simply for the resources it yields.

FAUNA

The dominant animal life of Planet is the mind worm, a horrid-looking little parasitic carnivore about 10 cm long. A single mind worm is a dangerous pest, able to burrow into a human brain and devour it, while the victim succumbs to violent delusions or dangerous fantasies, or lives out his deepest terrors. Many theories have been advanced to explain the psychoactive nature of these attacks but none have been experimentally validated.

Far worse than a single worm, mind worms are known to form vast mobile colonies, called “boils,” which can overwhelm a military unit or a whole human base.

In addition to the land-based boils, there is also an aquatic vector for mind worms called the Isle of the Deep. This floating terror can attack ships at sea. It can also attack coastlines, spitting up mind worm boils on shore. Even an airborne vector, poetically dubbed the Locusts of Chiron, haunts Planet’s stratosphere.

All three mind worm vectors go through a lifecycle. Seven different phases of growth for each vector have been identified (See Morale/Lifecycle, p. 87). The larger and more mature a boil, the more dangerous it is.

As your technology advances and your knowledge of Planet increases, you might acquire the ability to grow native life-forms and place them under your control for use as weapons. You may also acquire the ability to enslave wild mind worm boils into your service.
**TERRAIN**

The fantastic vistas of Planet offer more than alien beauty. Planet provides an endless variety of both gifts and pitfalls for the human settlers.

**RIVERS**

Since the dawn of human history, rivers have been the arteries of civilization. This remains true on Planet. If a river runs through a square, it delivers a +1 bonus to energy production. Rivers also tend to increase the moisture of the squares they run through or by. Rivers start from an underground source and follow the contours of the land down to the sea. With the proper technology you can tap into underground aquifers and create new rivers.

Rivers can also be used as natural roads. A unit can float up or down three river squares for every one square of normal movement it possesses.

**OCEANS**

There are three types of ocean terrain (corresponding to the three elevations of land terrain): ocean shelf, ocean, and ocean trench. With the proper technologies and equipment, ocean shelf squares can be improved, and aquatic bases can be established there. Ocean and ocean trench squares can not support bases or be enhanced.

**RESOURCE SPECIALS**

The ecology of Planet is complex, and a few regions produce significantly more nutrients, energy or minerals than would be expected from their moisture, elevation or rockiness. These special squares are indicated by icons, indicating the type of resource that is increased in that square.
UNITY PODS AND MONOLITHS

Before the *Unity* was destroyed, it released the Colony Pods of the seven factions and scores of robotic “seed pods,” carrying vital supplies and technology for humanity’s conquest of the new world. Unfortunately, because of the chaos in the last hours of the *Unity*, these pods were scattered at random over Planet’s surface.

Many of the *Unity* pods became infested with indigenous life-forms and opening them unleashes fungal blooms or mind worm boils. A few others react unpredictably with Planet itself, triggering massive earthquakes. The majority, however, continue to hold valuable resources such as units and information from old Earth.

Far more mysterious are the monoliths, relics of a mysterious intelligence that visited or inhabited Planet long before humanity’s invasion. The monoliths possess amazing psycho-technical powers. They can completely repair units that are damaged and even make improvements to those units’ performance. However, a monolith can enhance only so many units before its mysterious power is exhausted and it ceases to exist.

Monolith squares yield two of each sort of resource, regardless of the underlying terrain (until the monolith disappears).

Other relics of the past are the alien artifacts—mobile machines that seem to be a form of computer. Artifacts can be linked to Network Nodes to discover new technologies, or their power can be tapped to hasten the completion of Secret Projects.

Most of the time, monoliths and alien artifacts are indistinguishable from *Unity* pods to long-range sensors. Only by actually sending a unit into the square to open the pod can it be determined if the pod is a useful gift from the *Unity*, an alien relic, or a disaster waiting to happen.
FORESTS

One of the fundamental advantages of formers is their ability to plant forests of terrestrial vegetation on the more inhospitable regions of Planet. Forests provide a small yield of nutrients and minerals, while doing no damage to the ecology of Planet (in fact, forest can actually offset ecological damage from enhanced squares). Over time, forest squares expand into adjacent undeveloped squares. When a forest is harvested—that is, when any enhancement other than a road is built on it—you receive a one-time bonus of +5 minerals.

Planting forests is an excellent method of deriving benefit from arid terrain, particularly early in the game before some of the more advanced terraforming options are available.

FUNGUS

The ubiquitous xenofungus can produce resources when you discover the appropriate technology:

- **Centauri Ecology** gives you one nutrient per fungus square (per turn).
- **Centauri Meditation** gives you one energy per fungus square (per turn).
- **Centauri Genetics** gives you one mineral per fungus square (per turn).
- **Centauri Psi** gives you one more nutrient per fungus square (per turn).
- **Secrets of Alpha Centauri** gives you one more energy per fungus square (per turn).
- Terraformers can plant xenofungus after the discovery of Ecological Engineering; sea terraformers can plant sea fungus with this discovery.
LANDMARKS

Landmarks are giant natural wonders of Planet, the most important geophysical features of the world. You might encounter any of the following.

Freshwater Sea. The richest aquatic region on Planet provides +1 nutrient per square.

Garland Crater. Some thousands of years ago, a massive object crashed into Planet, leaving this vast crater. The rare and valuable remnants of the original object remain in the crater, giving the squares inside a +1 mineral bonus.

Geothermal Shallows. A whole field of underwater geysers underlies this coastal shelf, providing +1 energy per square.

Great Dunes. The largest, most unforgiving desert on Planet. The Great Dunes provide no bonus resources, and are in fact a remarkably inhospitable place.

Monsoon Jungle. This is an anomalous expanse of thick and curiously earthlike vegetation. The rich soil of the Monsoon Jungle yields +1 nutrient per square.

Mount Planet. This enormous volcano is active, but its slopes provide a +1 bonus of both minerals and energy. The enormous crater at the top fills a whole square with lava.

New Sargasso. This is the largest naturally occurring growth of sea fungus on Planet. It provides no special bonus, other than the resources that can be harvested from the fungus itself.

Pholus Ridge. The geothermal energy unleashed by the clash of two of Planet’s tectonic plates produces +1 energy per square along Pholus Ridge.

Sunny Mesa. This extensive highland offers no special resource bonuses, but its elevation makes it naturally excellent for harvesting energy.

The Ruins. A vast and ancient ring of monoliths embedded in thick xenofungus, it has no special resources, other than the monoliths themselves.

Uranium Flats. This savanna is particularly rich in heavy elements that provide +1 energy per square.
HOW TERRAIN AFFECTS MOVEMENT

A unit’s current movement points are displayed in the status view. As the unit moves, this number decreases as movement points are used up.

Certain terrain types impede normal movement (these penalties have no effect if moving across the square on a road or mag tube).

Rocky and forest squares each cost two movement points to cross, while sea fungus squares drain three movement points (however, these squares can always be entered by any unit having at least one full movement point remaining).

Trying to enter a land fungus square (successfully or not) always ends your unit’s movement, unless the unit is a mind worm boil, or your faction possesses the Xenoempathy Dome Secret Project.

Rivers are important in planning movement over undeveloped terrain, because of their ability to triple a unit’s normal move.

Terrain has no effect on the movement of air units.

HOW TERRAIN AFFECTS COMBAT

Terrain can, in specific situations, provide crucial advantages in combat to savvy commanders and deadly pitfalls to the unwary.

The important tactical ability of xenofungus to provide concealment has already been discussed (Flora, p. 39).

Artillery units (see Artillery Combat, p. 100) get an offensive bonus of +25% per level of altitude from which they are attacking.

Mobile units in smooth or rolling terrain get a +25% offensive bonus, reflecting their ability to make the most of their agility.

Any unit in rocky terrain gets a +50% defensive bonus.

Any unit in xenofungus gets a +50% defensive bonus, unless it is being attacked by a native life-form (either human-spawned or “wild”) in which case the unit gets no defensive bonus, but the native life-form gets a +50% combat bonus.
TERRAFORMING AND ENHANCEMENTS

Terraforming literally means “to make earthlike.” It is the art of maximizing resource production in a given area, making that square more hospitable to human life. It involves building technological enhancements to the square or, in extreme cases, actually changing the terrain itself. Terraforming operations must be carried out by former units, which become available upon discovery of Centauri Ecology.

TERRAFORM MENU

Terraforming actions are listed on the Terraform menu. Some actions on the menu require the discovery of certain technologies before the action becomes available; you see only the options allowed by your current technology on the menu. If an action is possible, the menu indicates the estimated time in turns required to complete it. The construction rates listed below are normal values and decrease as your terraforming technology and equipment improves. Note that the longer an enhancement takes to build, the more ecological damage it causes (see Ecological Risks, p. 54). Also, if you have the Simple menu option selected (see Game Menu, p. 29), you may not get all of these choices.

SQUARE ENHANCEMENT LIMITATIONS

Terraformers may construct facilities in individual squares to enhance the resource output of that square or to enhance the performance of the square in other ways. In general, a square may contain a road or mag-tube, a farm/soil enricher, and one additional enhancement. Building an enhancement in a square that contains any enhancement other than a farm (or soil enricher) and road (or mag tube) destroys the earlier enhancement.

CULTIVATE FARM/KELP FARM

A farm increases nutrient production by one; kelp farms (that is, farms in the ocean) increase nutrient production by two. Farms can be built only on land squares that are not rocky, occupied by xenofungus, or contain a monolith. A kelp farm may be built only on ocean shelf squares.
Building a farm requires Centauri Ecology. Building a kelp farm also requires Doctrine: Flexibility.

**CONSTRUCT SOIL ENRICHER**  
RATE 8

Enrichers may be built only on land squares containing farms. They increase the nutrient production of the farm by one.

Requires Advanced Ecological Engineering.

**CONSTRUCT MINE/MINING PLATFORM**  
RATE 8

Mining increases mineral production by +1 in flat or rolling squares and +2 in rocky squares, but they reduce nutrient output by one if the square would ordinarily produce more than one. A road in a mined rocky square adds an additional +1 to the square’s mineral output. Mining platforms increase mineral production by +1 in ocean squares until the discovery of Advanced Ecological Engineering; they add +2 minerals thereafter. Mines cannot be built in squares occupied by xenofungus or a monolith. Mining platforms may be built only on ocean shelf squares.

Building a mine requires Centauri Ecology. Building a mining platform also requires Doctrine: Flexibility.

**CONSTRUCT SOLAR COLLECTOR/TIDAL HARNESS**  
RATE 6 (+2 IN ROCKY)/4 (TIDAL HARNESS)

A solar collector (or a tidal harness on an ocean shelf) increases energy production. Solar collectors produce one energy per level of altitude (see Energy/Elevation, p. 38), while tidal harnesses produce +2 energy on ocean shelf squares. Solar collectors cannot be built in squares containing xenofungus or a monolith.

Building a solar collector requires Centauri Ecology. Building a tidal harness also requires Doctrine: Flexibility.
PLANT FOREST  

A forest of terran trees provides a limited but steady supply of nutrients and minerals, regardless of the underlying terrain. Forests spread to adjacent undeveloped squares over time. Forest can not be planted in squares containing enhancements other than a road or mag tube. Tree Farm and Hybrid Forest facilities increase the resources available from forest squares inside the base’s production radius.

BUILD ROAD  

Roads speed movement at a rate of three road squares for every one square of normal movement. Roads can be built only in land squares devoid of xenofungus until the discovery of Centauri Empathy, which allows roads to traverse xenofungus.

BUILD MAG TUBE  

Mag tubes are the heavy transit system of the future, utilizing magnetic forces to push passenger and cargo modules through a vacuum tube at near hyper-sonic speeds. Movement by mag tube is free, allowing a unit to move from any square with a mag tube to any other square connecting to that mag tube, as long as that unit has movement points remaining. Mag tubes may be built in any square containing a road.

Requires Monopole Magnets.

CONSTRUCT BUNKER  

Bunkers are defensive fortifications that can be built on any land square. They increase the defensive strength of all units inside them and limit the effects of collateral damage (see Damage, p. 103).

Requires Advanced Military Algorithms.

CONSTRUCT AIRBASE  

An airbase is a ground facility outside a base where air units can land safely, refuel, repair, and take off again.
Requires Doctrine: Air Power.

**CONSTRUCT SENSOR ARRAYS** ○  **RATE 4**
Sensor arrays allow you to see everything within a two-square radius (including units hiding in fungus). Additionally, a sensor array grants a defensive bonus to your units within its two-square radius. The ownership of a sensor array is determined by the borders of your faction. If your borders move, placing the array outside your boundaries, it may come under control of a new faction.

**REMOVE FUNGUS** F  **RATE 6**
Exterminates all the xenofungus in the square.

**PLANT FUNGUS** (Ctrl) F  **RATE 6**
Creates a fungus square and destroys enhancements other than roads or mag tubes.
Requires Ecological Engineering.

**CONSTRUCT CONDENSER** N  **RATE 12**
Condensers collect atmospheric moisture for use in irrigation. A condenser acts as a farm, but also increases the moisture level of every square within a two-square radius by +1 (if the square already has a farm or soil enricher, the condenser replaces the farm or enricher.)
Requires Ecological Engineering.

**CONSTRUCT ECHELON MIRROR** (Shift) E  **RATE 12**
An echelon mirror links a series of mirrors into a network. Every square adjacent to the echelon mirror with a solar collector enhancement gets a +1 energy bonus. An echelon mirror may be built on any land square.
Requires Ecological Engineering.
CONSTRUCT THERMAL BOREHOLE

A thermal borehole is a shaft driven through the crust of Planet to tap directly into the geothermal energy and rare mineral resources of the inner core. A thermal borehole yields +6 minerals and +6 energy, regardless of terrain type. No other enhancements except roads and mag tubes may be built in the same square as a thermal borehole, and they can only be built on land.

Requires Ecological Engineering.

DRILL TO AQUIFER

This command taps into a subterranean fresh-water source and brings it to the surface. The new water source immediately begins to flow to the sea, creating a river.

Requires Ecological Engineering.

TERRAFORM UP

You can raise the elevation of a square, raising surrounding squares proportionately, to create a natural slope. Terraforming up can increase energy production in the region and also provide a natural barrier to trap atmospheric moisture (see Energy/Elevation, p. 38), increasing rainfall on the windward slope and decreasing it on the downwind side. It can also be used to build land bridges by raising the sea floor.

Requires Environmental Economics.

TERRAFORM DOWN

You can lower the elevation of a square, dropping surrounding squares proportionately. Sea formers can lower coastal squares below sea level, turning them into ocean shelf squares (this is done by lowering an ocean shelf square to make it an ocean square—the slope created causes adjacent coastal squares to drop below sea level). This destroys any enhancements and units in the submerged area, as well as any bases not protected by a Pressure Dome facility. This option can be used to destroy land bridges.

Requires Environmental Economics.
TERRAFORM LEVEL  

You can reduce the rockiness in a square by one level per use.

FARM + SOLAR + ROAD

This command tells the former to build these three enhancements in the square, in sequence, each at their normal rate. If used in a xenofungus square, this command also clears the fungus. If terrain or previous enhancements prevent the completion of all three commands, as many as possible are executed.

FARM + MINE + ROAD

This command tells the former to build these three enhancements in the square, in sequence, each at their normal rate. If used in a xenofungus square, this command also clears the fungus. If terrain prevents the former from carrying out all three commands, it executes as many as possible.

CONSTRUCT ROAD TO

The former builds a road directly from its current position to one of your bases. You get a list of bases from which to select the destination for the road.

CONSTRUCT TUBE TO

The former builds a mag tube directly from its current position to one of your bases. You get a list of bases from which to select a destination. Your destination and current position need not already be connected by road—the former builds a road, as well.

AUTOMATIC ROADS

The former builds roads at its commander’s discretion.

AUTOMATIC TUBES

The former builds mag tubes at its own discretion. (It will build both roads and mag tubes in squares that do not already have roads.)
AUTOMATIC SENSORS [Ctrl] [Shift] [O] RATE 4/SENSOR
The former builds sensors at its own discretion.

AUTOMATIC FUNGUS REMOVAL [Ctrl] [Shift] [F] RATE 6/SQUARE
The former selects squares from which to remove fungus.

AUTOIMPROVE HOME BASE [Ctrl] [Shift] [A] RATE VARIABLE
The former automatically makes enhancements within the territory of the unit's home base. If the former is away from its home base, this command starts it moving towards home.

FULLY AUTOMATE FORMER [Shift] [A] RATE AS INDIVIDUAL ENHANCEMENTS
The former becomes fully self-directed, moving about and taking action as its commander sees fit. (Basic parameters for automated formers can be set using the Preference menus; see Automation Preferences, p. 201).

RESOURCE PRODUCTION TABLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Underlying Terrain</th>
<th>Nutrients</th>
<th>Minerals</th>
<th>Energy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Raininess</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arid</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moist</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rainy</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rockiness</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flat</td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rolling</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rocky</td>
<td>0(1)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elevation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1-4[2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ocean</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Fixed Squares

*The production of the following squares is fixed, regardless of underlying terrain.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Underlying Terrain</th>
<th>Nutrients</th>
<th>Minerals</th>
<th>Energy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Base</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note: bases get resource bonuses as well</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forest (^3)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monolith</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thermal Borehole</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fungus (^4)</td>
<td>0-2</td>
<td>0-2</td>
<td>0-2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Modifiers**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Modifier</th>
<th>Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>River</td>
<td>+1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Farm</td>
<td>+1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kelp Farm</td>
<td>+2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soil Enricher</td>
<td>+1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Condenser</td>
<td>+1(^5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Echelon Mirror</td>
<td>+1(^6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tidal Harness</td>
<td>+2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mine (^7)</td>
<td>-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Road (^9)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mining Platform</td>
<td>+1 or 2(^10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NutrientBonus</td>
<td>+2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MineralBonus</td>
<td>+2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EnergyBonus</td>
<td>+2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recycling Tanks (^11)</td>
<td>+1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

1 Rocky terrain negates all nutrient production from raininess.

2 In order to harvest energy based on a square’s elevation, the square must have a solar collector. Squares with solar collectors yield 1 energy for each thousand meters above sea level, starting at 1 for squares 0 to 1,000 meters above sea level, up to 4 for squares over 3,000 meters above sea level.
3 Harvesting a forest square (i.e., building any enhancement other than a road in that square) yields a one-time bonus of 5 minerals. Tree Farm and Hybrid Forest facilities each increase nutrient production in forest squares within that base’s production radius.

4 Your ability to extract resources from fungus improves as you acquire new technologies. See Fungus, p. 43.

5 Also raises the raininess by one increment in a two-square radius.

6 Also provides +1 energy to every adjacent square with a solar collector.

7 A mine will not reduce nutrient production to zero.

8 +1 in flat or rolling terrain, +2 in rocky terrain.

9 Roads provide +1 minerals in rocky squares with a mine (total bonus from road and mine: +3). Roads do not provide a bonus to mines in flat or rolling terrain.

10 Bonus is +1 until the discovery of Advanced Ecological Engineering, +2 thereafter.

11 Recycling tanks only affect the central base square.

ECOLOGICAL RISKS

If Planet’s complex ecology is not respected, it turns on an invader. Each technological enhancement constructed on any square in a base’s production radius increases that base’s ecological disruption. In general, the more complex an enhancement (i.e., the longer it takes to complete), the greater the damage it causes. Also, the higher a base’s mineral production, the greater the chance of ecological disaster.

Your ecological damage ranking, as shown on your base screen (see Data Readout, p. 73), gives the percentage chance on each turn that Planet will react to your disruptions, in the form of uncontrolled fungus blooms that wipe out all existing enhancements in a given square. The new fungal squares also often spawn voracious native life-forms.
Ecological damage can be minimized (or even eliminated entirely) through Social Engineering (increase your Planet rating; see Social Factors, p. 141), base facilities (Centauri Preserve, Temple of Planet; see Facilities, p. 64) and Secret Projects (The Pholus Mutagen and others; see Secret Projects, p. 65).

**RANDOM NATURAL PHENOMENA**

Planet is a mysterious and complex system. It constantly produces new and unexpected means to discomfit and endanger humanity, but it can also capriciously produce surprising blessings.

The influence of Planet’s suns and moons may provoke a burst of mind worm activity, or solar flares may increase energy stores while disrupting diplomatic communications, or you may discover an unexpected store of extra resources near a base, or an alien plague may break out. The effects of random events range from windfalls to disasters. Some events directly affect your faction, others affect other factions, and many affect all of Planet indiscriminately.

Some events happen instantaneously; others last for several years. Negative random events can sometimes be avoided (for example, plagues are far less likely to break out in bases with biology lab facilities), but most just have to be ridden out, for better or worse.

The only thing that can be reliably said about natural phenomenon on Planet is it’s always safest to expect the unexpected.

Random events can by turned off in the game configuration options.
CHAPTER 4

COLONIZING PLANET
COLONIZING PLANET

Your faction begins as a few huddled refugees in a single, makeshift encampment. It’s up to you to see that it grows into a self-sufficient, globally dominant society.

BASES

Your fundamental goal on Planet is for your faction to survive and thrive. Your faction expands, in terms of size, power and influence, by building new bases. These bases are each independent, self-contained ‘cities’—the centers of your faction’s economic, military, technological and social progress. A base’s production radius extends up to 20 squares surrounding it, up to two squares away excluding diagonals. It is from these squares that the resources are gathered for your faction’s consumption.

BASE MANAGEMENT: THE ESSENTIALS

Your bases produce several different types of items, all of which are used in various ways to build your new society. To enter one of your bases, on it in the World View.

Base Governor is an intelligent manager that can control your base production for you. The governor can be set to one of four priorities—Explore, Discover, Build or Conquer (see Governor, p. 69).

Citizens—the laborers and followers of your faction—populate your bases. These citizens work the surrounding terrain to collect resources: nutrients, minerals and energy.

Nutrients feed your people to keep them alive and functioning. Nutrients that are not used directly for this purpose help to grow the base population. Population growth is essential for a strong empire, since more people mean more workers to collect resources.
Minerals represent all raw materials derived from Planet that are used for construction. They are used to build units (vehicles and equipment) and base facilities (special buildings). They are also used to maintain units (provide spare parts and so on) supported by the base.

• Units are mobile, and may be used for defense, exploration and conquest.

• Facilities increase the capabilities of the base that builds them. Certain one-of-a-kind facilities (see Secret Projects, p. 165) can be built only once but benefit your whole faction. Most facilities have a prerequisite technology that you must discover before you can build the facility (see Facilities, p. 64).

Energy is collected from the area surrounding your base, from rivers, or by using solar collectors to harness heat (see Terraform Menu, p. 46). The energy you collect is allocated for use in three different areas of your bases: Economy, Labs and Psych. (Note that Specialist citizens can increase energy allotments in specific areas; see Citizens, p. 61.)

• Energy allocated to Economy is used to maintain base facilities; any excess is placed in the energy reserves. Your faction’s economic power is measured by the size of its energy reserves. These reserves are saved as “energy credits,” and can be used like money for base facility maintenance, commerce between factions, or to expedite construction projects.

• Energy allocated to Labs speeds research into new technologies.

• Energy allocated to Psych helps maintain order and peaceful existence inside your bases.

• See Energy Allocation, p. 117, for more details.

GETTING BASES

When you arrive on Planet, your first base is usually placed for you, depending on your game setup options. Once your first base is established, you can build colony pods to construct others, or acquire bases from other factions through conquest (see Bases and Facilities, p. 104), Probe Team activity (see Mind
Control, p. 135), or diplomacy (see Diplomatic Contact, p. 127). There are two types of bases: those established on land and those established in the sea.

- To build a land base, press $B$ while a land colony pod is active. This establishes a new base on the square the pod currently occupies. Land bases cannot be established on rocky, fungus or monolith squares.

- Sea colonies can only be established by sea colony pods on ocean squares without sea fungus.

Colony pods can also be used to increase a base’s population instantaneously—place a pod in an existing base, and press $B$ to increase that base’s population by one.

**Location, Location, Location**

Your bases should be placed near good resources, with ample nutrients, minerals and energy available nearby. When founding new bases, remember that green is good — the more green in an area (representing rainfall), the more nutrients may be produced. Green areas of the map almost always make excellent base locations, particularly those that are near rivers, which generate additional energy and expedite the movement of units around the base.

Placing your bases in useful relationship to each other is a very important component of success in *Sid Meier’s Alpha Centauri*. Put your bases too close together and they’ll cannibalize each other’s resources, limiting their growth and economic power. If you spread them out too much, you’ll be wasting much of Planet’s resources, as well as compromising your ability to defend your territory.

**WORKING THE LAND**

Each of your bases is a self-contained “city,” with an area under its influence up to 20 squares surrounding it, up to two squares away. This is called its “production radius” (see diagram).

Before your base can exploit the resources of any square in its radius, a citizen must be assigned to work it. If a base has a population of five, it can exploit up to five squares in its production radius, in addition to the square
it's in (that square is automatically fully utilized, with no need of actually assigning anyone to work it).

You can place your workers by hand (see Assigning Citizens to Work, p. 71), or the base governor assigns citizens as he sees fit (see Governor, p. 69).

CITIZENS

The human citizens of your bases represent a resource even more vital than energy, minerals or nutrients. While the base governor can handle much of the day-to-day work of citizen allocation, ultimately it is up to you to assign your citizens for the greater good of the faction. Note that each “citizen” represents a thousand or more humans. There are four classes of citizens on Planet: Workers, Talents, Drones and Specialists.

Workers are the salt-of-the-Planet, skilled workforce that keeps things running along smoothly.

Talents are the cream that rises to the top of your society, your pool of highly skilled professionals. Talents are created by facilities, Secret Projects, certain specialists, and energy allocated to Psych (each two energy units allocated results in one additional worker becoming a talent; see Energy Allocation, p. 117).

Drones are the unskilled, unsuitable and disgruntled among your people. They’re lazy troublemakers, and they all carry weapons. Drones have a profound effect upon social order inside a base. See Drone Riots, p. 63.
• **Specialists** do not work the outlying squares of the base to harness resources. Instead, they work inside the base, adding directly to the base’s Economy, Psych and Labs production (see *Energy Allocation*, p. 117).

Until the base has sufficient population to work every single square in its production radius, you have to create specialists (they don’t “just happen”).

Different types of specialists become available as your technology advances, and some advances render certain specialists obsolete. A base of any size can have doctor or empath specialists, but a base must have Population 5 before it can create other types. To create a different specialist, on a citizen’s icon in the Base Control Screen.

The various types of specialist are:

• **Technician.** Technicians keep the base running at maximum efficiency, adding +3 to the Economy allotment per technician in the base. They become obsolete when you acquire Fusion Power technology, replaced by Engineers.

• **Doctor.** A healthy population is a happy population. Doctors increase Psych allotment at a base by +2 per doctor. Doctors are rendered obsolete by Centauri Meditation and are replaced by Empaths.

• **Librarian.** Librarians are an invaluable asset to research, providing +3 to Labs allotment per librarian. They require Planetary Networks, and are rendered obsolete by Mind/Machine Interface, replaced by Thinkers.

• **Engineer.** A corps of engineers can optimize all of a base’s functions, yielding +3 to Economy and +2 to Labs per engineer. They are acquired along with Fusion Power technology, and they never become obsolete.

• **Empath.** Empaths have actually learned to use the psi potential of their brains, providing +2 to both Economy and Psych per empath. They require Centauri Meditation, and are rendered obsolete by Secrets of Alpha Centauri, replaced by Transcendi.
• **Thinker.** Thinkers have maximized the computational capacity of their brains and provide +1 Psych and +3 Labs per thinker. Thinkers require Mind/Machine Interface, and become obsolete with Secrets of Alpha Centauri, replaced by Transcendi.

• **Transcend.** The penultimate stage of human mental evolution, transcendi provide +2 to Economy, +2 to Psych, and +4 to Labs. They require Secrets of Alpha Centauri and they never become obsolete.

**GOLDEN AGE**

If a base of size three or greater has no Drones, and the number of Talents is equal to or greater than the number of Workers, that base enters a “Golden Age.” For the duration of the Golden Age, the base’s growth rate and energy production are both enhanced (equivalent to a +2 Growth, +1 Economy on the Social Engineering screen; see *Society Window*, p. 136). The Golden Age ends once there are more Workers than Talents, or if any Drones appear.

**DRONE RIOTS**

If the number of Drones in your population exceeds the number of Talents, the result is a Drone Riot, which shuts down the base’s entire research and production capabilities. If left unchecked, rioting Drones start to destroy facilities, and may even cause a base to defect to a rival faction.

To end a Drone Riot, you can move military units into the base to act as police (the number of police needed is determined by your Social Engineering choices), adjust your Social Engineering to increase your Psych rating globally (see *Society Window*, p. 136), or create Specialists to increase it locally. To avoid Drone trouble in the long term, there are numerous facilities and Secret Projects, such as Recreation Commons and The Human Genome Project (see *Appendix 2*), that increase your Psych rating or suppress Drone activity.

When your faction grows very large, you come to a point where Drone production and inefficiency both accelerate dramatically. Beyond this point, extra Drones may appear due to the difficulty of managing a far-flung empire.
When you reach this threshold, your advisors remind you if you are about to found a base that sends you over the limit; you can choose to continue or abort. If you go past this point, make sure your social and economic choices are arranged to support it.

**UNITS**

Units are mobile teams created for military, engineering, trade, exploration or diplomatic purposes. There are land, sea and air units, many with special abilities. There are a multitude of different units that your faction can build as its technological abilities grow.

There are five vital statistics (Movement Points, Attack Strength, Defense Strength, Reactor and Morale) that determine how a unit rates in movement and combat.

- **Movement Points.** The number of squares the unit can enter each turn, assuming no external penalties or bonuses.
- **Attack Strength.** A measure of the unit’s ability to overcome a defender.
- **Defense Strength.** A measure of the unit’s ability to resist an attacker.
- **Reactor.** How much damage the unit can take before destruction. The reactor also affects the cost of a unit.
- **Morale.** A measure of the unit’s discipline and experience. There are seven levels of Morale (see Morale/Lifecycle, p. 87), and it is the most important factor in Psi combat (see Psi Combat, p. 102).

**FACILITIES**

Facilities are major public improvements to a base. A base builds facilities to increase its efficiency, productivity and/or power. All facilities provide some useful benefit to a base, but not all benefits are necessary to a given base at a given time. Some facilities come with both benefits and costs and can do more harm than good if placed where they’re not needed (punishment spheres,
for example, eliminate Drone problems but reduce Labs production). Most facilities require an ongoing investment of energy credits to maintain, which is taken from energy allocated to Economy.

A complete list of Facilities, including their benefits and costs, can be found in Appendix 2, p. 163.

RELOCATE HEADQUARTERS

This build order (see Build Orders, p. 67) causes a new headquarters to be constructed in this base. You can only have one headquarters for you entire faction. When the new headquarters is completed, your previous one is disbanded. Headquarters provide essential coordination among the bases of your faction, which keeps inefficiency low. Inefficiency results from increasing distance from your headquarters, so it’s usually good to maintain your headquarters near the center of your empire.

SECRET PROJECTS

Secret Projects are massive works requiring a great concentration of research effort and a very long time to complete. The good news is that they provide dramatic advantages to your faction.

Only one of each of the 32 Secret Projects can be built on Planet. The other faction leaders do anything they can to complete a Secret Project before you and claim its benefits for their faction. If a rival faction builds a Secret Project you’re working on, you must transfer your research investment to some other Secret Project, or allocate it to new construction.

If a base with a Secret Project is ever completely destroyed, that project—and any ongoing benefits from it—are gone forever, for you and all other factions. If a base with a Secret Project is captured, that Secret Project—and any ongoing benefits from it—become the possession of the capturing faction.

A complete list of Secret Projects can be found in Appendix 2, p. 170.
STOCKPILE ENERGY

If you don’t particularly need any new units or facilities from a base, but don’t want to let its production capacity go to waste (or if your faction is strapped for cash) you can order your base to Stockpile Energy. This causes the base to immediately sell off every excess mineral it produces in exchange for energy credits, which are then deposited in your energy reserves.

BASE CONTROL SCREEN

The Base Control Screen is one of the main nerve centers of your society. Second only to the main map, this is where you’ll do most of the actual “work” of playing Sid Meier’s Alpha Centauri.

Information on each base, its citizens, resources, and production may be found on the **Base Control Screen**. There are several different ways to access this screen.

- Click on the base you want to look at.
- Press **Enter** when the terrain square containing the base is highlighted or when a unit in the base is active.
- Double click on any base name on the Base Operations Status Screen (accessed via your HQ Menu, p. 110).
on the ZOOM button when selecting a base from the Locate Base screen (accessed via the Map Menu, p. 32).

A TOUR OF THE BASICS

The Base Control Screen allows you to control your base to a minuscule level, but if left alone the base can do a pretty good job of running itself. Most of the time, you’ll be checking the Base Control Screen just to take a quick look at the current status of a base—what it’s building, how its citizens are doing, and so forth. Below is a quick guide to reading the most important data from the Base Control Screen (you can also on any part of the Base Control Screen for a short explanation of its function). Many of these readouts also provide advanced control functions, which are described below this section.

GOVERNOR

This command bar allows you to automate management of the base, based on one of four broad priorities. on any of the four choices (Explore, Discover, Build or Conquer; see Governor, p. 69) for specifically tailored development.

BUILD ORDERS

The Build Orders Window shows the base’s current build orders, a graph indicating how far along it is (each square represents one mineral of cost—filled-in squares are saved minerals, empty ones remain to be collected), and an estimate of time to completion considering the base’s current production rate. You can also on the CHANGE button to establish new build orders (see Production Readout, p. 78).
RESOURCE MFD

The screen at the upper center of your Base Control Screen is a multi-function display (MFD): it can be set to display several different readouts, but the one we’re interested in at the moment is the Resource MFD. This is a map showing the territory controlled by the base and what resources each square is producing. (Squares outlined in white are under the control of a neighboring base.)

NUTRIENT TANKS

This graph shows how your base is growing. When your nutrient tanks fill up (all the squares are bright), the population of the base increases by one citizen and the nutrient tanks empty. Conversely, if your base isn’t producing enough nutrients to support all its citizens, nutrients are drawn from the tanks. If the tanks empty and you still have a nutrient shortfall, you lose a citizen to starvation.

POPULATION

This readout shows every citizen in the base. If the number of red Drones is equal to or greater than the number of green Talents, watch out—that base is in danger of a Drone riot. (See Drone Riots, p. 63.)

BASE FACILITIES

This is simply a list of every facility and Secret Project currently built in the base.
BASE CONTROL SCREEN —
SECTION BY SECTION

GOVERNOR

If you'd rather not worry too much about the year-to-year operations of a particular base, you can put the Base Governor in charge, making it his responsibility to assign citizens to work and determine which squares to develop and what projects to undertake. If you don’t like a decision that is made, you can always overrule it.

To activate the governor, any of the five buttons at the top of the Base Control Screen. On lower difficulty levels, the governor is always active as the default.

The governor’s priorities are set depending on which of the five options you select. (Once the governor is on, on the active priority to turn the governor off.)

- **Default.** The governor pursues a strategy mixing growth and defense concerns. This is the automatic priority at difficulty levels where the governor defaults to “on.” To activate the governor with default priorities, on the GOVERNOR button until only that button is lit.

- **EXPLORE.** The base devotes itself primarily to producing units to explore new terrain. New colonization (colony pods) and population growth are also priorities.

- **DISCOVER.** The governor maximizes Labs output, seeking to optimize the speed of discovery of new technologies. It also emphasizes Secret Projects and probe teams for intelligence gathering.

- **BUILD.** The base disregards most external concerns, concentrating on its own growth, terraforming, and the creation of new facilities.

- **CONQUER.** The base goes on a war footing, producing primarily military units and facilities with specifically military applications (perimeter defense, command center).
MFD

The MFD (multi-function display) is located in the upper center portion of your Base Control Screen. It normally appears as a map of territory inside your base’s production radius (this is the Resource Screen, below).

The MFD has three functions. To switch between functions, press one of the three buttons below the MFD.

RESOURCE MFD

The resource MFD appears as a map of territory inside the base’s production radius, showing terrain and any enhancements as they normally appear on the main map. Blacked-out squares are unexplored territory, and red-tinged squares with a white border are currently under production by a different base (yours or another faction’s). Each square currently in production (i.e., with a worker assigned to it) displays the amount of each resource it is currently generating.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Icon</th>
<th>Icon Color</th>
<th>Resource</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>![Green Icon]</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Nutrients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Blue Icon]</td>
<td>Blue</td>
<td>Minerals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Orange Icon]</td>
<td>Orange</td>
<td>Energy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ASSIGNING CITIZENS TO WORK

Your Resource Screen is used to control your base’s resource production.

If you \(\text{click}\) on any square currently under production, you reassign that square’s worker to become a Specialist (see Citizens, p. 61). That square is immediately taken out of production.

If you \(\text{click}\) on any square not currently in production, the governor selects a Worker or Talent to begin working on that square. The governor selects a square to abandon in favor of the new square.

If you want to reassign a Worker from one specific square to another, \(\text{click}\) on the square you want to take out of production (to temporarily create a Specialist), then \(\text{click}\) on the new square to reassign that Worker to it. You can also drag and drop Workers from the population bar onto empty squares. Say, for example, that you suspect the Hive is getting ready to launch an invasion of your territory. This reassignment function allows you to order a crucial border base to live off nutrient tanks for a few turns while your Workers maximize mineral production to complete a Perimeter Defense without dipping into energy reserves.

If you \(\text{click}\) directly on the base square itself, the governor selects assignments for all available workers, with a view towards (a) meeting the base’s current resource needs first, and (b) maximizing production (according to the governor’s current priorities, if any).

SUPPORT MFD

This screen shows the location of all the base’s units not located in the base itself. The Support Screen displays the entire world map, with the base appearing as a bright dot, and supported units as smaller dots.

PSYCH MFD

This screen displays a graphic readout of the citizens in the base and the effect of various factors on their attitude.
This graph contains up to five lines, each line cumulative with the ones above it. A line is only displayed if it’s actually applicable to the base at the moment.

- **Unmodified.** Shows all citizens and their attitudes before other modifiers are taken into consideration.

- **Psych.** Shows attitudes modified by your energy allocation to Psych (see *Energy Allocation* p. 117), if any, cumulative with the above.

- **Facilities.** Shows attitudes modified by the base’s facilities, if any, cumulative with the above.

- **Police.** Shows attitudes modified by any police units (see *Drone Riots*, p. 63) assigned to the base, cumulative with the above.

- **Secret Projects.** This line adds in the effects of any Secret Projects your faction has completed, cumulative with the above.

**RESOURCE COLLECTION READOUT**

Located just below the main MFD, the Resource Collection Readout shows exactly how much of each resource your base is producing, and how each is being used.

- **Lost.** Red blocks are resources lost to inefficiency (see *Inefficiency*, p. 118).

- **Used.** Blocks to the left of the bar are being used for maintenance of units and facilities already completed (minerals) or to feed the population of the base (nutrients).

- **Surplus.** Blocks to the right of the bar are surplus, and are going to population growth (nutrients), project completion (minerals), or energy allocation (energy).
ENERGY ALLOCATION READOUT

This displays how energy collected at this base is allocated according to the priorities set in the Social Engineering Window (see Energy Allocation, p. 117).

- Economy. Energy allocated to Economy is used to maintain your base facilities; any surplus goes into your energy reserve.
- Labs. Energy allocated to Labs drives your research efforts.
- Psych. Energy allocated to Psych helps keep your people happy and productive.

DATA READOUT

This area (below the Resource Collection Readout) shows general useful information about the base.

- Base Name. The arrow buttons next to the base name allow you to cycle through the Base Control Screens of all your bases in alphabetical order. The right button cycles you forward through the alphabet, and the left button backwards.
• Mission Year. The current year according to Earth’s Gregorian calendar.

• Energy Reserves. This is your faction’s total energy reserves currently available for investment.

• Ecological Damage. If this number is higher than 0, there is a chance each turn that one of the squares in the production radius of this base will experience ecological disaster (see Ecological Risks, p. 54). The ecological damage number represents a percentage chance, per turn, of an ecological accident happening in the base’s territory.

POPULATION

This bar below the data readout shows every citizen in your base. You can click on the citizen’s icon to change Workers into Specialists, or Specialists into Workers or different sorts of Specialists. (See Citizens, p. 61.)

CONTROL BUTTONS

These buttons are located just beneath the Energy Allocation Readout.

• RENAME opens a dialogue box allowing you to change the name of the base.

• OK closes the Base Control Screen and resumes the current turn.

NUTRIENT TANKS

Each citizen in your base requires two nutrients per turn to survive. Any nutrients produced but not consumed (surplus) go into the nutrient tanks, whose status is shown in the upper left portion of the Base Control Screen. As the tanks fill up, the dark green squares turn bright. Green squares with a white outline represent the projected increase in the tanks next turn, based on current production values. When the nutrient tanks are completely “full,” your base increases its population by one, and the banks return to empty.
Likewise, if your base is not bringing in enough nutrients to support itself, the projected decrease in the tanks is shown by bright squares outlined in red. When the tanks are completely emptied, the base loses one unit of population to starvation. The base continues to lose one citizen per turn thereafter, until it reaches a population that can be supported by current nutrient production.

As your bases expand in size, the capacity of your nutrient tanks also expands. The larger your base, the more excess nutrients you need to increase its size further.

**COMMERCE INDEX**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Faction with whom you have Commerce</th>
<th>Treaty Status with that Faction</th>
<th>Amount of Energy this Base Receives from this Commerce each Year</th>
<th>Amount of Energy they are Receiving from the Commerce.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

This screen records any ongoing trade between this base and any other faction. It displays the names of each faction you trade with, the diplomatic status of that faction (see Diplomatic Relations, p. 129), any energy coming in to that base, (i.e., +1) and energy from that base going to the faction being traded with. In general, the closer your ties with another faction, and the larger the faction, the more commerce increases.

**BASE FACILITIES**

This window (in the upper right of your Base Control Screen) lists all the facilities that have been built in the base.

Some Secret Projects provide a certain type of facility in each one of your bases. Such facilities appear dimmed in the Base Facilities window. Facilities received as part of a faction power (such as the Hive’s Perimeter Defenses and the University’s Network Nodes) also appear dimmed in this window. Facilities that are displayed with an asterisk (*) are obsolete or redundant. They can be scrapped without fear of losing any of your base’s abilities or capacity.
RECYCLE WINDOW

If you click on a facility in the Base Facilities Window, it brings up the Recycle Window. This allows you to demolish that facility and sell off the scrap for a few energy credits. When you call up the Recycle menu, you are given the options of:

- canceling
- consulting the Datalinks
- scrapping the facility
- scrapping all such facilities at all your bases

GARRISON

This bar displays pictures of each unit currently inside the base. Passing your cursor over a unit brings up its data in the Production Readout.

FORCES SUPPORTED

This window, in the bottom right corner of the screen, displays pictures of all the units anywhere on the surface of Planet currently supported by the base. Depending on your Social Engineering choices and the number of units a base supports, supported units may require a regular expenditure of minerals for maintenance, and military units stationed outside the base may also cause discontent.
among citizens. The number of units a base may support for free (if any) is determined by your support rating (see Social Factors, p. 141, and Home Base, Support and Pacifism, p. 89), while the number it can support before it starts to foment unrest is determined by your police rating (see Social Factors, p. 141).

Units that require minerals to be expended each turn for their support appear with a mineral icon next to them. Remote units which are causing unrest are indicated with a peace symbol.

Click on any unit in this display for a menu of orders that can be given to the unit. These options are:

- **Activate** (zooms to that unit, activates it, and closes the base screen).
- **Edit Unit** (appears only when scenario editor is activated; see Appendix 4: Advanced Customization, p. 206)
- **Sleep/Board Transport**
- **Hold**
- **Disband**
- **Order Unit to Come Home**

For more information on these commands, see Action Menu, p. 92.

**BUILD ORDERS**

This extremely important section of the Base Control Screen is located in the lower left corner. This is where you track the base’s progress in current build orders for units, facilities or Secret Projects, set new orders, or change orders when necessary. It consists of two windows.
CURRENT ORDERS

The window to the left displays a picture of the unit or the facility currently under construction.

The CHANGE button brings up the Production Readout (see Production Readout, below), from which you can select new orders.

The HURRY button allows you to expend extra energy credits to complete a project more quickly. The game displays the amount of energy necessary to complete the project, and you have the option of paying enough to complete the entire project on the next turn (if you have sufficient energy to do so), or of making a partial payment to speed up construction. You may only make one partial payment per turn.

QUEUE

The window to the right allows you to plan your development up to nine projects in advance.

If you click the QUEUE button, the Production Readout appears. Double-click a selection from the readout to insert it at the top of the queue. You can click a currently occupied slot in the queue, then double-click a selection in the Production Readout to insert the order at that slot (orders currently in the queue are not erased, they are just shifted down one slot each below the newly inserted order). For more information, see Production Readout, below.

PRODUCTION READOUT

This vitally important window can be accessed with the CHANGE or QUEUE buttons on the Base Control Screen. It includes a complete list of units, facilities and Secret Projects that your faction is currently capable of constructing. To order the construction of a unit or facility, double-click on its name to place it in production or into the queue.
There are a series of buttons along the bottom of the Production Readout. Some or all of the following buttons are available when you access the screen.

- HELP. Opens the Datalinks.
- WORKSHOP. Opens the Design Workshop (see Designing Units, p. 81).
- REPLACE. Replaces the highlighted project in the queue with a project you select.
- INSERT. Places new build orders in the queue at the point selected, without erasing any orders currently in the queue.
- DELETE. Deletes the selected project from the queue.
- CANCEL. Closes the Production Readout with no changes.
- OK. Accepts the current projects and closes the Production Readout.

SWITCHING PRODUCTION

If you decide to halt production on a Secret Project, unit or facility before it is complete and switch production to something new, you lose some of the minerals you have accrued towards the original project. The sole exception is switching from one Secret Project to another Secret Project, which does not forfeit any minerals.

You will need to switch production if a Secret Project you have been working on is completed by another faction first. If you stop a Secret Project, you can roll all of your investment into another Secret Project.

HOW MUCH DO YOU LOSE?

If you make any other kind of switch, you lose 50% of your investment after the first 10 minerals. This applies if you roll your investment from a Secret Project into anything but another Secret Project, or if you transfer your investment in a unit or facility to any other unit or facility.

The first 10 minerals that you invest transfer with no loss. All investment over 10 minerals is cut in half. For example, if you have invested 8 minerals, all 8
minerals transfer, with no loss. If you have invested 40 minerals, the first 10 transfer, as do half of the remaining 30: you transfer 25 (that is, 10 + 30/2) and you lose 15 (30/2).

If the transfer more than pays for the designated purchase, up to 10 of the remaining minerals are held over for your next production, with no additional loss. Anything over 10 minerals is lost completely. Continuing our example, where you have transferred 40 minerals (which are reduced to 25 minerals in the transfer): if you transfer those 25 minerals to a purchase that only requires 8 minerals, 10 of the remaining 17 minerals (25 - 8) are held over and can be applied to yet another purchase. The last 7 minerals are lost completely.

Up to 10 minerals can be held over between production orders even when orders are completed normally. For example, if you have a base producing 23 minerals, and it has 5 minerals left to create a unit, on the next turn it creates the unit (expending 5 minerals), carries 10 minerals over to the next production orders, and the final eight minerals are lost completely.

UNITS

Units are those elements of your faction—people and equipment—that actually go out upon the face of Planet and do things like fight, explore and discover.

At the most basic level there are three kinds of units in Sid Meier’s Alpha Centauri—land, sea and air units. Land and sea units are basically self-explanatory—land units can only move on land squares, sea units on sea squares. Both types are subject to movement restrictions from fungus and other obstructions (see How Terrain Affects Movement, p. 44). A unit’s chassis determines what kind of unit it is (see Chassis, p. 83).

Air units are a special case. They have no terrain restrictions at all, but most have a limited range. Air units carry only enough fuel for two turns of operations. The unit must replenish its fuel every other turn at a friendly base or air-base, or it runs out of fuel. The unit’s movement is displayed as a split number, for example, 12/24. The first number is the amount of moves remaining
this turn, and the second number is the total movement available over two turns. A yellow or red split number indicates that this aircraft should be heading for a nearby base to avoid the risk of a crash.

**Choppers** are air units, but they don’t run out of fuel. Instead, they need ongoing maintenance when in regular use. If a chopper does not end its turn in a base or airbase, it takes a small amount of damage. (Damage is repaired, over time, when the chopper is at a base or airbase.) This damage weakens the chopper in combat, and can result in the chopper falling apart and crashing, if allowed to continue too long without repairs in a base or airbase.

**DESIGNING UNITS**

As you advance technologically, you are given the option of using units pre-designed by your designers, or of designing your own units, using a fixed assortment of components. Custom-designed units allow you to specifically tailor units to your personal mission needs and also make full use of some of the more exotic special abilities. New components are discovered in conjunction with many technology advances (see Special Abilities Table, p. 183). For example, High Energy Chemistry allows you to build with plasma steel armor and nerve gas pods.

To design a new unit, press [U], or access the Design Workshop Screen from the HQ menu or the Production Readout.

Units are made up of up to six components:

- Chassis
- Armament
- Armor
- Reactor
- Special Abilities (up to two)
PROTOTYPES

Any time you order construction of a unit with untried components, that unit is a prototype. If you have already built a laser crawler and an impact rover, your first laser rover (which consists entirely of components found in the previous units) would not require a prototype. But if you discovered the missile launcher and decided to build a missile rover, the new missile launcher component would make your first missile rover a prototype.

Prototypes require a great deal of research and development. Therefore, a prototype costs 50% more minerals to complete than subsequent units of this type will. On the upside, all prototype units get a +1 to morale, since new technologies are usually put in the care of elite forces. Note that the Spartans do not have to prototype new units due to their expertise with military hardware.

OBSOLETE UNITS

As new versions of components are researched, old ones become obsolete. Units with obsolete components disappear from your Production Readout and are replaced by the newer models. You can also declare units of a given kind obsolete from the Design Workshop.

UPGRADES

When an old unit becomes obsolete, you don’t have to junk it or let it wheeze around. When you discover a new version of a component, you are given the option of upgrading all the units that discovery has made obsolete. You must pay an energy charge for each obsolete unit in your possession in order to upgrade them. If you don’t want to spend the energy to upgrade all your units of a given sort at once, you can also upgrade one at a time, using the Upgrade command—Ctrl-Shift-U on the Action menu (see p. 92). (Note that you can also disband a unit at a base, and receive half its original cost in minerals.)
CHASSIS

The Chassis of the unit determines two vital characteristics: whether the unit is a land, sea or air unit; and its basic movement rate (see Movement, p. 90).

A complete list of Chassis types and their associated values can be found in the Units Table, p. 175.

WEAPON

The unit’s weapon type determines its offensive firepower. A list of armaments and their associated values appears on the Armament Table, p. 177.

An important special weapon is the Psi attack, described under Psi Combat, p. 102.

Non-combat units (colony pods, terraformers, and the like) can take unique abilities in their weapon slot—for example, transport modules, colony modules or probe team equipment.

ARMOR

A unit’s armor determines its basic defense strength. A unit is not required to have armor—even unarmored units get a small intrinsic defense strength.

A complete list of armor types and their associated values appears on the Defenses Table, p. 180.

REACTOR

Reactor Power determines how much damage the unit can actually take before it’s destroyed. Also, more advanced reactors actually reduce the costs of units.

A complete list of reactors with associated values appears on the Reactors Table, p. 182.
SPECIAL ABILITIES

You can also endow your units with special abilities to fulfill specific tactical needs. Some are geared towards attack, some to defense, and some are more esoteric. If, for example, the Gaians are attacking your faction with an invasion force of mind worms, you might want to counter with a force of units equipped with the Hypnotic Trance special ability, which gives the units a +50% defensive bonus against psi attacks. In the early stages of the game you can have no more than one special ability per unit type, but you acquire the ability to mount two special abilities on the same unit with the discovery of Neural Grafting.

A complete list of special abilities, with descriptions, can be found on the Special Abilities Table, p. 183.

CUSTOM UNITS

If you decide to build your own units to use in addition to the pre-designed units, you should know that the cost factors (given in Appendix 2) are not simply additive. The cost for a custom unit with many advanced features is far above the sum of its component prices. In fact, often if you take a “super unit” and tone down just one or two components a notch or two, you will find that you can now afford two or more of the slightly more modest units for the same price you’d have paid for a single super unit. Consider designing two different types of units which complement each others’ weaknesses rather than trying for one unit with no weaknesses. Advanced reactors make the unit more efficient and actually reduce its cost, so an advanced reactor can make more sophisticated units more affordable.

Many special abilities are, for obvious reasons, unavailable on units of a certain type. Aircraft, for example, cannot mount heavy artillery, while combat units cannot mount a heavy transport module.
BUILDING UNITS

Custom-designed units can be created in the Design Workshop, which can be accessed with U, or from the HQ menu or the Production Readout.

You can get a head start in designing the type of unit you want by either selecting a specific unit to modify, or by using a vehicle preset.

Specific unit designs are displayed in the long bar at the bottom of the screen. This bar contains all the unit types currently designed and in production, and can be scrolled using the arrow buttons at either end of the bar. Units which are obsolete to your faction, but still in production, are marked “obs.” Placing your cursor over any of the units in the bar displays information about that unit in the lower left window. Click on the unit to place it in the design screen for modification.

VEHICLE PRESETS

Vehicle presets are up-to-date versions of various vehicle types in a number of categories:

- Garrison. Defensive units designed to protect bases and fortifications.
- Infantry. General-purpose combat units particularly useful for attacking bases.
- Artillery. Units with long-range fire capability (see Artillery Combat, p. 100).
- Tank. Mobile units useful for attacks in open terrain.
- Scout. Lightly armored, very fast units.
• Naval. Combat ships.
• Transport. Non-combat ships designed to carry goods or personnel.
• Air Assault. Heavy bombers.
• Air Defense. Fighters designed to intercept and engage other aircraft.
• Chopper. Rotary-wing aircraft.
• Missile. One-use air units—once they hit their target, they are destroyed.
• Buster. Missile units capable of annihilating bases and the surrounding terrain.
• Paradrop. Units capable of performing airdrops and orbital insertions (see Drop Pods, p. 91).
• Amphibious. Units capable of attacking directly from ship to shore, or attacking sea bases from land.

DESIGN WORKSHOP

Once you’ve chosen a starting point, you can make the specific modifications you desire. The large round window shows the unit in development, its current stats and a working name based on its components. It also displays the unit’s cost, and a prototype cost if a prototype is necessary. This window is surrounded by six readouts showing the six component slots. ![Select Component] on a slot to select the component you want for your custom unit.

Control Buttons. There are seven control buttons below the Design Window. They are:

• APPLY. If a new unit type has been created, it’s placed in your Production Readout.
• DONE. Exits the Design Window. If a new unit type has been created, it is placed in your Production Readout.
• RENAME. Allows you to give the unit type a name other than its working designation.
• **Obsolete.** The unit type is removed from your Production Readout.
• **Upgrade.** Upgrades all units of this type to a superior design, if one is available.
• **Cancel.** Closes the Design Window with no changes.
• **Retire.** Disbands all units of this type, and removes the unit type from your Production Readout.

**BASIC UNIT TYPES**

Certain unit types begin the game already designed and prototyped:

• Colony Pod
• Basic Formers and Sea Formers (Super Formers can be modified)
• Scout Patrol
• Transport Foil and Supply Crawler
• Probe Team
• Native life-forms—mind worms, Isles of the Deep, Locusts of Chiron
• Alien Artifact (cannot be built, must be found)
• *Unity* units—*Unity* Rover, *Unity* Scout Chopper, *Unity* Foil (cannot be built, must be found)

As your technology advances you may want to design newer, more powerful units to fulfill these roles.

**MORALE/LIFECYCLE**

One of the most important aspects of any given unit is its morale—its overall discipline and experience. There are several levels of morale. Morale for native life-forms (mind worms, Isles of the Deep and Locusts of Chiron) is called lifecycle level, since a native unit’s morale reflects not only the experience of its human handlers, but also its physical maturity.
The importance of morale in combat cannot be overstated. Each level of morale gives a +12.5% bonus to the unit, in both offensive and defensive combat.

The most common manner in which a unit’s morale is increased is for it to survive combat and be promoted, but there are other ways to increase morale of both individual units and of your military in general. These include:

- **Monoliths** have been known to increase the morale of individual units (see Unity Pods and Monoliths, p. 42).

- **Base Facilities** can increase the morale of units made at that base. Command Centers provide +2 to land units, Naval Yards provide +2 to sea units, Aerospace Complexes provide +2 to air units, and Bio-enhancement Centers provide +2 to all units. Facilities provide morale bonuses only to units made after the facility’s completion; they do nothing for units already existing at the time they’re built.

Several base facilities also increase the lifecycle of any native units bred. The following confer +1 lifecycle bonus: Biology Lab, Centauri Preserve and Temple of Planet.

- **Secret Projects**

- **Social Engineering** (see Social Factors, p. 141)
HOME BASE, SUPPORT AND PACIFISM

The base that builds a unit is that unit’s home base. Units taken over by probe teams, or wild mind worms “tamed” by your faction, become the responsibility of the base geographically closest to the spot where the unit was acquired by your faction. A few units, such as those acquired far away from any base, do not require a home base at all.

You may change a unit’s home base by moving that unit to a new base and selecting Set Home Base ([Ctrl]H) from the Action menu. That base now supports the unit. The home base must pay the unit’s support cost, if any.

A support cost represents the cost of keeping a unit equipped and staffed. The cost for a given unit may be zero or one mineral per turn (as determined by your faction’s support rating; see Social Factors, p. 141). It is subtracted from minerals collected at the home base. If you find that a base cannot build new orders as quickly as it used to, it’s often the result of too many minerals used for support of existing units. In this case, try disbanding old or obsolete units (See Design Workshop, p. 86) so more minerals can go towards new production.

If your faction has a Police rating less than 2 (see Social Factors, p. 141), it is considered to be Pacifist. When a pacifist faction creates a unit and stations it anywhere outside its own territory (see Territory, p. 131), additional drones (see Citizens, p. 61) are created at the unit’s home base (representing social discord). On the base screen, the Forces Supported Readout shows the effects of pacifism as a peace symbol, one for each Worker that has become a Drone because of a unit outside its territory.
MOVEMENT

There’s more to getting your units where they need to go than just pushing them around the map. Moving a unit is an operation all to itself, and there are several essential principles you must keep in mind (plus a couple of exotic options that you can try).

In the absence of external bonuses or penalties to movement (see How Terrain Affects Movement, p. 45), a unit can move a number of squares equal to its movement rating. Land units can move only from one land square to another, and sea units can only enter sea squares.

ZONES OF CONTROL

Bases and land and air units exert a “zone of control” that restricts movement in their immediate vicinity, reflecting the difficulty of moving with an enemy nearby. A zone of control affects the eight squares immediately adjacent to a base or unit.

A zone of control has no effect on units of the same faction, units of factions sharing a Pact of Brotherhood, sea units, air units, or probe teams.

RESTRICTIONS TO MOVEMENT

A unit cannot move directly from one enemy zone of control to another. A unit can enter or exit an enemy zone of control freely as long as both squares are not enemy controlled.

A unit can always move into a base square, or into a square containing at least one friendly unit, regardless of zones of control.

Probe team units always ignore zones of control.
An advanced special ability—the Cloaking Device—makes a unit effectively invisible to the enemy, thereby allowing it to ignore zones of control.

**DROP PODS**

Drop Pods are a special ability component that allows units to make airdrops or orbital insertions. Discovery of Mind/Machine Interface allows construction of Drop Pods. Any unit with Drop Pods may make airdrops. Once you discover Graviton Theory or build the Space Elevator Secret Project, any unit with Drop Pods may make an orbital insertion.

To perform an airdrop or orbital insertion, the Drop Pod unit must begin in a friendly base or airbase, and may not have moved already this turn. At the drop command, ![parachute icon], a parachute icon appears and you can ![destination square]. The destination square may be up to 8 squares away and cannot contain enemy units or bases. The Drop Pod unit moves instantly from the start square to the destination square. Units take damage from airdrops—20% damage, or 26% if the unit has a singularity reactor.

If a unit tries to drop and then attack on the same turn, it receives a 50% penalty to attack strength.

Orbital insertions are executed identically, but the drop can be made anywhere on Planet.

An interceptor unit (see Air Combat, p. 101) stationed in a base within two squares of the drop point prevents an air drop to that location.
ACTION MENU

The Action menu contains all the commands that you can give your units (except for Terraforming commands, which are found on the Terraform Menu, p. 46). Some of these options only appear if your unit is capable of performing that action at the moment (for example, a combat unit that is not in a base will not see the Obliterate Base option).

CONSTRUCT BASE  B

This command can only be carried out by a colony pod. The pod transforms itself into a new base at its current location (if its current square is one on which a base can be built; see Resources, p. 36).

OBLITERATE BASE  B

This command can only be carried out by a combat unit (any unit with offensive armament) inside a base. It completely obliterates that base, putting all the citizens to death and leaving nothing but bare terrain. This is an atrocity (see Atrocities, p. 106), and results in severe repercussions from other faction leaders. (Note that obliterating a base which you just conquered is considered a worse atrocity than destroying one you built yourself—the other factions are distinctly upset by any hint of “factional cleansing” on Planet.)

LONG RANGE FIRE  F

Some units (notably artillery) can fire up to two squares away. To conduct long range fire, select this command (your cursor changes to a target symbol) and  on the square you wish to attack. If there are enemy units in the target square you attack those units, and if there are no enemy units you attack enemy terrain enhancements.

AIR DROP  I

Orders a unit equipped with a Drop Pod to make an air drop or orbital insertion. When you select this action, your cursor changes to a parachute icon, and
you can select a square to drop to. See Drop Pods, p. 91, for a full explanation of air drops.

**PSI GATE**

Orders a unit to teleport from any base equipped with a Psi Gate facility to any other of your bases so equipped. When you use this command a window appears displaying all available destinations. Select the desired destination to complete the movement.

**CONVOY RESOURCES**

Orders a supply unit to deliver resources. It has two distinct functions:

- If the supply unit is outside a base, it delivers available resources from its square to its home base each turn. Choosing this command brings up a menu from which you select the resources you wish to convoy. The unit cannot deliver resources from a square already being worked by a base’s citizens.

- If the unit is within a base, it convoys resources from its home base to its current location every turn.

**DESTROY ENHANCEMENTS**

Orders a combat unit or former to attack and destroy any enhancements in the square it currently occupies.

**DISBAND UNIT**

Permanently destroys a unit, taking it completely out of play. If done at a base, you get 50% of the original construction cost back. If the unit is outside a base, you get the option to “Self Destruct,” which violently destroys the unit while also damaging units in adjacent squares.

**AUTOMATE UNIT**

The unit’s commander determines the course of action.
EXPLORE AUTOMATICALLY

The unit, under its commander’s discretion, seeks out and explores uncharted terrain.

PATROL

This orders a unit to patrol back and forth between its current location and a second square you select. Use this command, then on the second square.

DESIGNATE BOMBING RUN

This order designates an enemy base as a target for routine air attacks. The unit attacks the base you select, returns to the nearest friendly base, repairs its damage, then attacks again. The unit continues until its orders change or it is destroyed.

GO TO BASE/SET AUTOFORWARD ROUTE

Select “go to base” to issue orders to a unit you want to move towards a particular base. The unit goes to any of your bases by the most direct route possible (if it can’t actually reach the base it goes to the closest square). Selecting this command brings up dialogue from which you select a destination.

When in view mode (see Map Menu, p. 32) and centered on a base, pressing allows you to set an autoforward route. This option commands any unit without orders in one base to head to another that you select, setting up a central rallying point for your troops. You may set autoforward routes for any kind of unit.

GROUP GO TO

This orders an entire group to go to a location you select (see Assemble Group, facing page). Use mouse movement (see Mouse Movement, p. 21) to and drag to the group’s final destination, then use this command before releasing. The line showing the proposed route to the destination changes from green to yellow. If you have not assembled a group, all units in the current square are moved.
ASSEMBLE GROUP (Shift J)
Orders your units to converge on the square with the active unit. When you use the assemble group command, you see a window that allows you to customize your group, with options to:

- Exclude units further than two squares away
- Exclude units with hold and sentry orders
- Exclude automated and patrol units
- Exclude ground, sea, air, offensive combat, defensive combat, terraformer, or probe team units.
- Exclude other units

Once you’ve established the parameters of your group, ASSEMBLE AT CURSOR to assemble the group at a spot you then select, CANCEL GROUP to cancel all group orders, CANCEL to exit the screen without taking action, or OK to assemble the group on the square with the active unit.

GO TO HOME BASE (Shift G)
The unit returns to its home base by the most direct route possible.

SET HOME BASE (Ctrl H)
If the active unit is in a base square, this command reassigns the unit to be supported by that base. This command does not appear if the unit is not in a base. See Home Base, Support and Pacifism, p. 89, for more on home bases.

ACTIVATE (MOVE NOW) (A)
Makes the unit under the cursor the active unit (see Active Units, p. 22). A unit that has already exhausted all its movement points can still be activated with this command, and given orders that don’t involve further movement in the current turn.
WAIT (MOVE LATER) **W**
This unit is skipped for now, but is re-activated again before the end of the turn.

UNLOAD TRANSPORT **Shift U**
Each unit being carried by a transport activates in turn, and may be moved ashore.

UPGRADE UNIT **Ctrl U**
This command only works if the unit can be upgraded (see Upgrades, p. 82). At the command to upgrade the unit, you are told how much the upgrade costs, and given the option of canceling or continuing. If more than one possible upgrade is available, you are asked to choose.

DESIGNATE DEFENDER **Ctrl D**
Allows you to select the unit in a stack that defends first in the event of an attack on that square. Otherwise, the computer automatically selects the unit with the highest defense strength as the defender. This command is useful if you don’t want your best unit in a stack to take the brunt of the attack, preferring to keep it in reserve for a counterattack.

SENTRY/BOARD TRANSPORT **L**
The unit stands down to repair itself, while posting sentries and maintaining a state of readiness. It stays in position and does not reactivate unless:

- it repairs itself to the maximum it can achieve under current field conditions
- an enemy unit enters an adjacent square
- it is attacked by artillery

If used in a base, this command causes the unit to automatically board any transport that has room for it.
PLACE UNIT “ON ALERT”  

Orders a unit to hold in the current square until an enemy unit comes within its movement range, then attack automatically. Air interceptor units automatically attack air units, bomber units attack land and sea units, and naval units attack naval units and transports. Land units attack adjacent land units.

HOLD 10 TURNS  

The unit holds its current position for 10 turns, then activates.

HOLD THIS POSITION  

The unit stays in its current position indefinitely. You must activate it directly to change its orders.

SKIP TURN  

Ends the current turn for that unit.

COMBAT  

At some point, even for the most peaceful and enlightened faction, armed conflict becomes inevitable. And, of course, if your faction is neither peaceful nor enlightened—if you actually like going out and beating up on the enemy—then armed conflict is not just inevitable, but essential.

Combat occurs when a unit tries to enter a square containing an enemy base or unit. (Probe teams are the exception here—their options are much more subtle. See *Probe Teams*, p. 133.)

Combat is decided by totaling the attacker’s strength and the defender’s strength. The probability of either side doing damage is equal to that side’s portion of their combined strengths. (For example, if the attacker has an attack strength of 10 and the defender a defense strength of 20, the attacker only damages the defender once, on average, for every two times the defender damages the attacker.) This process of assessing damage repeats until either
the attacker or defender is destroyed (the exceptions are artillery, p. 100, and disengage, below). It is entirely possible for the winner of a battle to come out severely damaged.

STACKED DEFENDERS

If a unit attacks a square containing multiple defending units, the unit with the highest defense acts as the defender (unless you have designated another unit in the stack as the defender; see Action Menu, p. 92). If the defender is defeated, and the square is not a base or bunker square, the rest of the combat units in that square take collateral damage (that is, they each take a certain amount of damage, determined by the reactor of the attacking unit).

Non-combat units in a stack are destroyed along with the last combat unit in the square.

DISENGAGEMENT

In combats where the defending unit is faster than the attacker (i.e., the defender has at least one more movement point than the other), the faster unit can disengage if the battle is going against it. When a unit disengages, it simply moves one square away from the attacker. This assumes, of course, that the square into which the unit is retreating is not blocked by impassable terrain or an enemy zone of control (see Zones of Control, p. 90). A faster defender automatically disengages when it has received 50% damage.

If the attacker has the ECM Jammer special ability, the defending unit can’t disengage from combat, even if faster. Also, if the defender attacked in its immediately preceding turn, it may not disengage under any circumstance.

COMBAT MODIFIERS

In addition to the strength of the units themselves, there are also external factors that can affect the outcome of combat. These take the form of percentage bonuses or penalties to the unit’s base score. For example, if a defending unit has a normal defensive strength of 20, a +15% bonus would give it an effective strength of 23.
SPECIAL ABILITIES

Many unit special abilities convey a bonus in combat (or inflict a penalty on the enemy). See the list in Appendix 2, p. 183.

TERRAIN

There are several occasions where terrain directly affects the odds in combat.

- Artillery units (see Artillery Combat, next page) get a +25% bonus per level of altitude if they are at a higher altitude than their targets.

- Mobile units in smooth or rolling terrain get a +25% offensive bonus, reflecting their ability to make the most of their agility.

- Any units in smooth or rolling terrain get a +50% defensive bonus against artillery attacks.

- A unit in rocky terrain gets a +50% defensive bonus.

- A unit in xenofungus gets a +50% defensive bonus, unless being attacked by a native life unit (in which case the attacker gets a +50% offensive bonus), or by a faction that has built the Pholus Mutagen Secret Project.

HASTY ASSAULT

Each time a land unit attacks, it drains one full movement point from the unit’s total move. If you have less than one full movement point remaining when you attack, that is considered a hasty assault, and it puts you at a serious disadvantage. If you have 2/3 of a movement point remaining, you lose 33% of your attack strength, and if you have only 1/3 of a movement point remaining, your penalty is 66%. (Movement status does not affect defensive strength.)

A hasty assault always drains any fractional movement you have remaining.

Sea units, air units and mind worms do not suffer the negative consequences of making a hasty assault.
BUNKERS AND BASES
Bunkers and bases offer a +25% defensive bonus to units within them. They also eliminate the effects of collateral damage. However, infantry gets a +25% bonus when attacking a base.

SENSORS
Units within 2 squares of a friendly Sensor Array (see Terraform Menu, p. 46) get a +25% defensive bonus.

AIRDROPS AND ORBITAL INSERTIONS
Drop units (see Drop Pods, p. 91) get a -50% penalty if they attack on the same turn in which they make the drop.

NON-COMBAT UNITS
Unarmed units get -50% penalty defending against combat units. A unit is considered “non-combat” if it has no weapon and no armor, so a former unit with plasma steel armor does not get the non-combat penalty when attacked.

ARTILLERY COMBAT
Naval units and units with the artillery special ability are able to use the Long Range Fire (F) command (see Action Menu, p. 92).

Unlike most combat, artillery combat (combat using the Long Range Fire command) does not continue until a unit is destroyed. Attack and defense strengths of the units are compared only once, and (if the defender loses the single round of combat) a point of damage is assessed against the defender. This reflects the nature of artillery combat, which is basically firing blind to harass and weaken the enemy. Note that land units can never be completely destroyed by artillery fire, and units in a base or bunker can never be damaged more than 50%, although repeated barrages will keep them from repairing damage. Targeting a square with no units for an artillery barrage actually attacks any terrain enhancements in the square.
ARTILLERY DUELS

An exception to this rule occurs when one artillery unit attacks another. In this case an artillery duel occurs, as each unit focuses its fire on the other. Artillery duels are to the death, just like most other combats, but they utilize attack strengths only.

ARTILLERY COMBAT MODIFIERS

- Artillery units get a +25% bonus for each level of altitude (see Energy (Elevation), p. 38) they are above the target.
- Land-based artillery gets a +50% bonus when attacking naval units.
- A unit in smooth or rolling terrain gets a +50% defensive bonus against artillery attacks to represent maneuverability as a defensive measure against artillery.

AIR COMBAT

There are two basic types of aircraft, bombers and interceptors. Bombers may only attack bases and surface units; they cannot attack air units. Interceptors can attack other air units, but are at a penalty when attacking surface targets. Specifically, interceptors attack other air units at twice their normal offensive power, but land and sea targets at only half normal strength. (Combat between two interceptors is at normal odds.) Any unit can attack a chopper.

To attack needlejets in flight (i.e., anywhere outside of a base or an airbase), a unit must have the Air Superiority special ability. Air units at bases and airbases are considered to be “on the runway,” and can be attacked by any unit.

Missiles are a special kind of air unit. They are one-shot “fire and forget” weapons. Missiles are always destroyed after an attack, even if they win.

Air units can attempt to destroy enemy terrain enhancements by flying over the enhancement and using the Destroy Improvement command (see Action Menu, p. 92).
The Designate Bombing Run and On Alert commands (see Action Menu, p. 92) can also be used to automate air combat.

**AIR COMBAT MODIFIERS**

Air units receiving an artillery strike get a +100% bonus to defense strength. (An artillery unit must have the Air Superiority special ability to attack air units.)

**NAVAL COMBAT**

Sea units can attack normally against other sea units and sea bases. Attacks against bases and units on shore are handled as artillery strikes. (See Artillery Combat, p. 100) A sea unit does not have to have the artillery special ability to attack adjacent coastal squares.

**NAVAL COMBAT MODIFIERS**

Ships in a base square are considered to be “in port,” and defend at a -50% penalty against land and air units (for a net penalty of -25%, after the +25% defensive bonus for being in a base is factored in). Against other naval vessels, ships in port fight as normal.

**PSI COMBAT**

Psi combat is conducted by the native life forms of Planet (mind worms, Isles of the Deep, Locusts of Chiron) and by certain advanced technological units. Psi combat seeks to turn the enemy’s own minds against them, inducing horrible hallucinations and phobias, which cripple the enemy’s ability to defend itself, and may even induce self-destructive behavior.

Morale modifies the basic factors used for psi combat, such as weapon and armor strength. Thus an Isle of the Deep of Mature Boil status (morale level 5) would usually overrun a green unit (morale level 2), but would probably find itself overmatched against a commando unit (morale level 6). Again, normal weapon and defense strengths are completely irrelevant to psi combat—a tiny Unity rover of Hardened status would be more likely to survive than a singularity cruiser of Disciplined status.
PSI COMBAT MODIFIERS

- The attacking unit gets a 3-to-2 advantage in psi combat when the defending unit is a land unit.

- Units may install the special abilities of Hypnotic Trance (discovered with Secrets of the Human Brain) and Empath Song (discovered with Centauri Empathy), which each provide +50% in psi combat.

- A faction’s units gain a +10% psi attack bonus for each positive level of their Planet rating (see Social Factors, p. 141). Factions with negative Planet ratings receive an equivalent penalty.

- The Neural Amplifier Secret Project gives its faction a +50% psi defense bonus. The Dream Twister Secret Project grants a +50% psi attack bonus.

DAMAGE

When a unit takes damage, the colored bar graph located just above and to the left shows how badly it’s been hurt. As the bar descends, it also changes color from green to yellow to red. When the bar is completely exhausted, the unit is destroyed.

As surface units take damage, their movement rates decline. This reduces the maximum move of vehicles with a move of more than one, and also makes it more difficult for vehicles to enter fungus squares.

Units repair damage by remaining undisturbed for a turn. To skip a unit’s turn, press [Spacebar]. If they move or come under fire, they do not repair that turn. No unit may repair itself to better than 20% damage (80% normal strength) using field repairs, unless your faction possesses the Nano Factory Secret Project. The Sentry command can streamline the field repair process, requiring much less of your attention ([L]; see Action Menu, p. 92). In a base, several facilities can repair an undisturbed unit in one turn:
• A Command Center repairs land units in one turn
• A Naval Yard repairs naval units in one turn
• An Aerospace Complex repairs air units in one turn
• A Biology Lab repairs native units in one turn

Units repair at least 10% of their damage each turn, modified as follows:
• +10% in friendly territory
• +10% if air unit at airbase
• +10% if land unit in bunker
• +10% if in a base
• x2 rate if a land unit is on board a Transport with a Repair Bay
• +100% if the controlling faction owns the Nano Factory Secret Project.

BASES AND FACILITIES
Numerous base facilities affect combat, either directly or indirectly.

All units inside a base get a +25% bonus to their defense, and units in bases do not take collateral damage (see Damage, p. 103). You can designate a unit to act as the primary defender (using Ctrl D, or the Designate Defender command in the Action menu), or the game automatically defends with the strongest defensive unit in the base.

When the last base defender is eliminated in combat, the base population goes down. This population loss can be avoided by building a Perimeter Defense facility in the base.

Building a Perimeter Defense or Tachyon Field doubles the defense strengths of all the units in the base. Building both of these facilities triples defense strengths.

Units in a headquarters base automatically gain +1 Morale when defending.
CONQUEST AND ANNIHILATION

When all the combat units defending a base are destroyed (including naval units “in port” and air units “on the strip”) the base can be entered by an attacking unit, causing the base to pass into the control of the attacking faction. (If a wild native life unit is attacking an undefended base, the native life form devours one citizen from the base, then dissipates.)

If the base population is reduced to zero in combat, the base ceases to exist. Any Secret Projects within it are lost forever, to all factions. Land units within the base at the time of its destruction are left intact; sea and air units are destroyed.

Conquering a base destroys a random number of the base’s facilities.

ATTACKING ENHANCEMENTS

You can destroy enhancements in an undefended square, including roads, farms and other enhancements, by moving a unit onto that square and executing the Destroy Enhancement command (D). You can destroy only one enhancement per unit per turn. In squares with multiple enhancements you are prompted to choose the one to destroy.

AIR, COASTAL AND ARTILLERY BOMBARDMENTS

You can attack enhancements in undefended squares using artillery, aerial bombing runs, or coastal bombardment. However, unlike a direct attack, such actions are not guaranteed to be successful—they have a certain percentage chance of actually hitting something significant. Air units attack enhancements with a 75% success rate, artillery attacks with a 50% success rate, and missiles always hit their targets. If you are successful bombarding a square using artillery, a random enhancement is destroyed. If you attack using aerial bombardment, you choose the enhancement to destroy.

Artillery and naval bombardment attacks are made using Long Range Fire (see Action Menu, p. 92). Air attacks are made by moving into the square and using the D (Destroy Enhancement) command.
ATROCITIES

Atrocities are crimes against humanity. They always draw a radical response from the other faction leaders, ranging from trade sanctions to a war of extermination against your faction. But, if a majority of the Planetary Council votes to repeal the U.N. Charter (see Planetary Council, p. 132), then these actions no longer count as atrocities.

Atrocities include:

- **Planet Buster.** Any use of the base-destroying planet buster missile. This will cause swift and harsh reaction from all factions.

- **Nerve Gas.** Activating the nerve gas pods special ability in combat.

- **Genetic Warfare.** Probe teams (see Probe Teams, p. 133) can conduct genetic warfare against a base's population.

- **Obliteration.** Wiping out one of your own bases is considered an atrocity. Wiping out a base you just conquered calls for a much more severe penalty than wiping out a base you built yourself.

- **Nerve Stapling.** This is one of the lesser atrocities, evoking less outrage from the other factions since it is committed only against your own citizens. However, if you commit this act against a conquered base, it is treated much more seriously. You can nerve staple the entire population of a base, a process that eliminates both drones and talents, making Drone riots (see Drone Riots, p. 63) impossible for a length of 10 turns.
SPECIAL CASES

ALIEN ARTIFACTS
Alien artifacts have no defensive capability — except that they cannot be destroyed in combat. Instead, when an enemy unit attacks a square with an undefended alien artifact, or the artifact moves adjacent to an enemy, the artifact passes into the possession of the enemy faction. Likewise, when the last defender of a base falls, any alien artifacts within the base emerge and pass into the control of the attacking faction.

PROBE TEAM COMBAT
Probe teams cannot attack most units (outside of their probe abilities), but they can attack other probe teams. Probe team combat, like psi combat, is influenced by the Morale level of the two combatants (see Psi Combat, p. 102, and Morale/Lifecycle, p. 87).
CHAPTER 5

CONTROLLING SOCIETY
CONTROLLING SOCIETY

There’s far more to building a successful empire than building facilities and pushing units around. *Sid Meier’s Alpha Centauri* allows you to manipulate economic forces, diplomacy, espionage and political ideology to strengthen your faction’s hold on Planet.

HQ MENU

The options on the HQ menu are your primary tools for both long-range planning and information about your faction’s progress.

SOCIAL ENGINEERING (E)

This screen is used both for Social Engineering proper (see Society Window, p. 136), and for energy allocation (see Energy Allocation, p. 117).

SET RESEARCH PRIORITIES\CHANGE RESEARCH GOAL (Shift R)

This option allows you to switch from one research project to another in mid-stream. This can be useful if, for example, the Gaians begin work on the Xenoempathy Dome (which you consider crucial to your long-term strategy), and you still haven’t started research on Centauri Meditation, the prerequisite technology to building this project.

This functions in two ways, depending on whether the “Blind Research” rule was selected for your game. (See Game Rules, p. 197.) If “Blind Research” was selected, then you are prompted to select a new area in which to concentrate your research (see Technology, p. 119). If “Blind Research” was not selected, then you may choose a new technology to research.

If you elect to change research goals with “Blind Research” off, you are prompted to select a new goal. Note that if you switch research projects with “Blind Research” off, you lose half of the research you put in to the previous project (see Switching Production, p. 79). This means that it’s better to switch
projects early in the process, and best not to switch at all, unless you must. If “Blind Research” has been selected, then no research is lost.

**DESIGN WORKSHOP (U)**

This option leads to the Design Workshop. It is fully described under Designing Units, p. 81.

**DATALINKS (F1)**

Datalinks are the essential depository of information about Planet, the factions, technology, facilities and Secret Projects, and the fundamental concepts behind *Sid Meier's Alpha Centauri*.

**REPORT READOUTS**

The next eight options on the HQ menu are your report readouts. They contain an abundance of information about your current status in the game.

Each of the report screens has a DATALINKS button to open the Datalinks, and a CANCEL button to close the screen. Also, along the bottom of each report screen is a line of icon buttons, each one of which takes you directly to one of the other report screens. (The button for the current screen is highlighted.)

In the center of each screen (near the game year) is a large colored icon that represents your faction. Next to it may be a series of smaller, monochrome icons. These icons represent other factions whose Report Readouts you have access to. You can gain access to another faction’s report screens either by placing an infiltrator in the faction (either through probe team action – see Probe Teams, p. 133 – by becoming Planetary Governor, or by constructing the Empath Guild Secret Project) or by forming a Pact Brotherhood with a fac-
tion. ⚑ on the faction’s icon to switch to that faction’s report screen, or on the large colored icon to see your own.

LABORATORIES STATUS (F2)

This screen displays a great deal of information about your current research project.

At the top of the screen is the name of the technology being researched, the average time between projects in years, and the estimated time to complete the current project. Below that is the technology tree (see Technology, p. 119), focused on the current research goal.

In the lower center of the screen, above the research screen icons, is the current year, the cost of the current project in technology points (see Technology, p. 119), the amount of technology points currently amassed towards that project, and the tech points your faction accrues each turn.

The lower left corner of the screen is an MFD (multi-function display). ⚑ on “Technology” for a list of technologies your faction has already acquired. ⚑ on “Bases” for a list of all your bases, each with its technology output each turn. You can ⚑ on a base to open its Base Control Screen.

The lower right corner of the screen is a series of bar graphs, each one displaying how far you’ve progressed along each technology track.

ENERGY BANKS (F3)

This screen offers a detailed rundown of your faction’s budget.

The Summary window records total energy reserves, net income, gross income and maintenance expenses for the
entire faction, as well as loan payment income and a breakdown of all active loans (including loan payments suspended due to vendetta; see Diplomatic Contact, p. 127).

The Bases window, in the lower left corner of the screen, displays gross income, expenses and net income (or deficit) for each base. Click on a base to see its facilities, facilities maintenance and total energy.

The Maintenance window lists each type of base facility that your faction has currently built, showing the total number of such facilities and the total maintenance cost per turn for all facilities of that type. Click on a facility to see which bases possess that facility.

BASE OPERATIONS STATUS [F4]

This screen provides a detailed breakdown of how each of your faction’s bases is currently engaged.

The large upper MFD displays the name, icon and current governor setting for each of your bases. You can click on a base’s name to select that base, or double-click to go directly to that base. You can also click a base’s name for a list of command options, including opening the Base Control Screen, centering the Main Map on the base, changing production, hurrying the current build orders, or changing the Governor settings. You can also change the Governor settings if you click on the base icon. (See Bases, p. 58, for more on these options.)

If one base is selected, its location on the world map will be shown (lower right corner).
Production to see each base’s current build orders, how many minerals have been accrued towards those orders, total mineral cost of those orders, and estimated number of turns until completion. For more on Build Orders, see p. 67.

Citizens displays the population graph for each base, showing the function and attitude of each citizen. on a worker to reassign as a specialist, and on a specialist to reassign as a worker (see Citizens, p. 61).

Garrison shows each unit currently stationed in each base. on a unit for a menu of options to activate the unit or give it orders.

- Activate
- Edit Unit (appears only when scenario editor is activated, see Appendix 4: Advanced Customization, p. 206)
- Sentry/Board Transport
- Hold
- Disband

For more information on these commands, see Action Menu, p. 92.

A smaller MFD is located in the lower left of the screen. This MFD may display the Governor Readout and the Best Bases Readout, depending on which of the two buttons you have selected.

The Governor Readout allows you to apply any of the normal governor options (see Governor, p. 69). You can change the governor options for a specific base (the base highlighted in the upper MFD), or choose SELECT ALL to simultaneously change every base in your faction. on each of several bases to select multiple bases.

The Best Bases Readout shows your top-performing base in each of several categories, including mineral, nutrient and energy production, energy reserves, lab output, Psych output, population and garrisoned units.
SECRET PROJECT DATA (F5)
Displays all Secret Projects currently either completed or under construction, with their location and the controlling faction. Projects in progress are located above completed projects, showing every faction working on a given project at the moment. If the same faction is working on the same Secret Project at two or more bases, only the base which is furthest along towards completion is displayed. Click on a base to see where it is located on the map (lower right).

ORBITAL AND SPACE STATIONS (F6)
Displays all known orbital facilities currently in orbit. You can click Orbital Attack View to engage in satellite warfare. If you have any orbital defense pods, you may select an enemy faction in the lower left MFD and which type of satellite of theirs you want to attack in the lower right MFD. An ATTACK! button will appear for you to confirm your attack.

MILITARY COMMAND NEXUS (F7)
Displays the name, icon and basic stats for every unit prototype your faction has produced or is producing. The number of units active, in production and lost in combat is given for each unit prototype. Types of units (land, naval, air and non-combat) are listed in the lower left window. Click on a unit type in this window to see all units of this type.
ALPHA CENTAURI SCORE [F8]
Displays your current score. (See Scoring, p. 145.)

COMMUNICATIONS AND PROTOCOL [F12]
Displays the Commlink menu (see Commlink, p. 23), which allows you to contact other factions.

HALL OF FAME
This is a list of the best scoring games, by faction.

Corner Global Energy Market
This option only appears after you’ve discovered Sentient Econometrics. By selecting this option, you may try to control Planet by cornering the global energy market (See Winning the Game, p. 143).

Review Scenario Objectives
This option only appears if you are playing a scenario, and contains information about your objectives and score status.

ECONOMICS
Cash flow has been a headache of civilized society since the Sumerians decided that building a city might be a neat idea. This will not change in the future. The productivity of your faction depends largely on the output of the individual bases (see Base Management: The Essentials, p. 58), but there are also fundamental policy decisions that can affect how efficiently your faction exploits the resources it gathers.
ENERGY ALLOCATION

Each of your bases requires a certain amount of energy to maintain. It is up to you, however, to decide how to best allocate your energy surplus. There are three priorities among which you must divide your energy resources: Labs, Psych and Economy.

Adjusting Energy Allocation. You allocate your energy using the three sliding bars on the bottom of the Social Engineering Screen (see HQ Menu, p. 110). You can increase or decrease any of the bars in increments of 10% (of your total energy budget) if you click on the arrow icons: left to decrease, right to increase. When you get one of the values to where you want it, you can click on the lock icon to lock it down, and thereafter all exchanges are between the other two values. (Otherwise the game decides how to add or subtract energy when you alter the levels.)

At the start of the game your energy allocation is set to 50% Labs, 50% Economy and 0% Psych.

- Labs. Lab investments go directly to research. The more you invest, the faster you discover new technologies, facilities and Secret Projects.
- Psych. This investment is spent on recreation, culture and basic luxuries. The more you invest in Psych, the more workers become talents, offsetting the malcontent drones in your bases (see Citizens, p. 61).
- Economy. Energy reserved for Economy goes to support your existing base facilities, with any excess stored in your energy reserve. The more you invest in Economy, the more wealth you have available for emergencies.
Making radical adjustments in your allocation levels creates inefficiency. This loss to inefficiency is displayed on the Social Engineering Screen (a high Efficiency rating — see Social Factors, p. 141 — can diminish such losses). In general, the greater the difference between your Labs and Economy settings, the more inefficiency occurs.

**INEFFICIENCY**

As your faction expands to new bases, the bureaucracy required to administer it grows more unwieldy. The net result of this inevitable process is inefficiency — a certain amount of resources that a base collects are never available for actual use. The efficiency of any given base is directly related to both its size and its distance from your faction HQ. Larger, more remote bases are most prone to inefficiency.

The primary way to combat inefficiency is through Social Engineering (see Society Window, p. 136), but inefficiency can also be curtailed via certain facilities, such as the Children’s Creche. Relocating your headquarters to a central location can also help control inefficiency.

You create a different kind of inefficiency when you adjust your energy allocations in extreme ways (see Energy Allocation, p. 117). This inefficiency reflects the principle of diminishing returns—past a certain point, the more effort you put towards a particular priority, the less the effect of the increased effort.
TECHNOLOGY

The success of your faction on Planet is judged, to a great extent, on your ability to acquire new technology.

Scientific breakthroughs are a large part of technology advances, but they’re not the whole story. For example, any primitive tribesman of old Earth could hollow out a tree and make a canoe, but your faction can’t build sea-going units until it acquires Doctrine: Flexibility. This isn’t because water works differently on Planet, it’s because it takes a great deal of work, planning and inspiration to set up a self-sustaining shipbuilding industry of the sort required to produce high-tech, ocean-going vessels on command.

Many of these technologies combine a new scientific discovery with a new way of looking at the world. The result is usually quite useful.

RESEARCH

Your faction can research only one technology at a time. When you acquire a new tech, you begin research on your next discovery. Most technologies can only be researched after certain other technologies—its “prerequisites”—have already been discovered, so as you advance technologically, your options grow and change. Your research efforts can be augmented by allocating more energy to Labs, building base laboratory facilities, and creating scientifically oriented specialists in your bases (see Appendix 2: Technology Tree, p. 185, for a list of all technologies).

BLIND RESEARCH

Normally (unless you disable the option during game setup) your research is “blind.” You do not select a specific research goal. Instead, you are asked to choose a research priority, and your goal is randomly selected according to that preference. You can select multiple priorities, which increases the number of technologies available under your preferences.

If you disable blind research, you select specific technologies to work towards.
However, the list of available technologies at any given time is random, and does not necessarily include every technology for which you have completed the prerequisites.

**THE TECH TREE**

Technology advances are like building a house—you have to start at the bottom and work up. Technologies are not discovered in a vacuum; each new discovery depends on everything that’s gone before it. In *Sid Meier’s Alpha Centauri*, the underlying structure that determines the order of breakthroughs is called the Tech Tree. When you first land on Planet there are a few initial technologies towards which you may begin to direct your research. From this foundation you begin to build the technological superstructure of human civilization on Planet.

The entire tech tree is displayed on the poster included with this game. You can also view the tech tree in the game itself, using the Datalinks or the F2 hotkey. In the Datalinks, techs with white lettering are those you’ve already discovered, techs with dark lettering remain to be discovered.

**Prerequisites.** With the exception of the first seven technologies, each new technology requires that at least one and usually two other technologies be acquired before it can even be researched. These precursor technologies are the prerequisites of the new technology (which in turn is a prerequisite for one or more technologies to come). Knowing the prerequisites for an important technology is an essential part of formulating an effective research strategy. For example, if you want to be the first faction to learn Secrets of the Human Brain (and obtain the bonus technology that distinction brings you), you must know that you have to discover Social Psych and Biogenetics first.

Prerequisites for a given technology can be found in the Datalinks of the game, and are shown on the Tech Tree poster.

**Tracks and Levels.** The technology tree is divided into four technology tracks. These divisions have no direct game effect, but they do make it easier to keep track of your progress up the tech tree. The four tracks are:

- **Explore.** Discoveries that make it easier to unravel the secrets of Planet.
• **Discover.** Theoretical breakthroughs in the realm of “pure science.”

• **Build.** New technologies that enhance the infrastructure of your faction and its bases.

• **Conquer.** Military advances.

The levels simply record how far along the track a given technology lies. For example, Monopole Magnets, the discovery that makes the mag tube enhancement possible, is Build 6, expressed as B6. When trading techs with other factions, you can compare these numbers, to get an idea of which faction is getting the better deal.

**ACQUIRING TECHNOLOGY**

Your scientists in their research labs drive your technology acquisition. But there are several other ways to pick up tech, and it’s in your best interest to exploit as many of them as possible.

**Research.** As long as you have any energy allocated to Labs, your faction conducts research.

**Unity Pods.** Some of the pods left by the *Unity* contain downloads from the Datalinks of old Earth which, when combined with your own discoveries, can provide the key to unlock a new technology instantaneously.

**Alien Artifacts.** These esoteric devices can be taken to a base and linked with that base’s network node (if it has one). Such a linkage inevitably provides an instant tech advance. Normally, the network node for any given base can only be linked to a single artifact (the Universal Translator Secret Project is the only exception to this rule—you may link any number of artifacts to it).

**Diplomacy.** One of the most common forms of diplomacy, particularly early in the game, is for the leader of another faction to offer to trade a technology you need for a technology he or she needs. Sometimes he or she also offers to trade technology for a copy of a world map, or even for energy credits. Sometimes, the other faction just demands that you fork a tech over unilaterally. You can initiate similar requests to the other leaders (see Diplomatic Contact, p. 127).
Probe Teams. Probe teams can steal technology from other factions (see Probe Teams p. 133).

“Secrets” Technologies. The three “secrets” technologies (Secrets of the Human Brain, Secrets of Alpha Centauri, Secrets of Creation) each provide an extra instant tech advance to the first faction to discover them.

Secret Projects. The Universal Translator gives the faction that builds it two instant tech advances immediately after it’s built. The Planetary Datalinks give you instant access to any technology that is already known to any three other factions. The Network Backbone and Supercollider can greatly enhance your tech output.

Conquest. In some games (depending on what rules options you selected; see Game Rules, p. 195) conquering an enemy base allows you to select any one of that faction’s technologies that you do not already possess.

THE USES OF TECHNOLOGY

The biggest reason to research new technology is that it lets you build new things—units, facilities and Secret Projects. That’s not all it does, however.

Technology can also:

Increase your production. Certain discoveries lift caps on the maximum amount of a given resource you can take from a given square. Other discoveries increase your ability to take resources from fungus squares. See Fungus Production, p. 43.

Expand your infrastructure. Some later discoveries can make certain key base facilities part of your infrastructure—they are added to every new base that’s built, at the time of establishment (bases that were built before the discovery have to build the facility normally). See Facilities, p. 64.

Grant access to specialists, enhancements and social options. New technologies can give you access to new specialists (making current technologies obsolete), new terraforming enhancements, and new social options (see Society Window, p. 136).
DIPLOMACY

The least predictable part of your own faction’s survival on Planet is dealing with the other six factions. Each of the other faction leaders is a distinct personality, with his or her own goals, motivations and temperament. You have to know when to get tough and when to ease off, when giving a little yields long-term rewards and when it just makes you seem weak.

FACTIONS

Each faction behaves in a manner consistent with its individual nature. The philosophies of the factions mentioned below are explained beginning on p. 11.

Distinguishing data for the factions is given in several categories:

- **Faction Characteristics** are adjustments to social factors that are intrinsic to that faction.

- **Aggression** indicates how eager the faction is for a fight. There are three levels: Aggressive, Erratic, Pacifist.

- **Priorities** represent what’s most important to the faction. There are four possible priorities:
  
  Explore (The faction seeks to occupy as much territory as possible)
  Discover (The faction seeks to discover new technologies)
  Build (The faction seeks to build up its bases as much as possible)
  Conquer (The faction seeks to maximize military strength)

- **Starting Tech** is any technologies that the faction automatically possesses at the start of the game.

- **Agendas** are Social Engineering choices that the faction *always* makes, when available.

- **Aversions** are Social Engineering choices that the faction *never* makes.
BELIEVERS
Faction Characteristics
+25% Bonus when attacking enemies, from the strength of convictions.
+1 Probe (devout believers difficult to brainwash)
-2 Research (suspicious of secular science)
-1 Planet (believe Planet is their promised land)
Accumulates no research points until MY 2110.
May not use Knowledge value in Social Engineering.
Aggression Aggressive
Priorities Explore, Conquer
Starting Tech Social Psych
Agenda Fundamentalist (Politics)
Aversion Knowledge (Values)

GAIANS
Faction Characteristics
+1 Planet (environmental safeguards; can capture mind worms)
+2 Efficiency (experience with life systems & recycling)
-1 Morale (pacifist tendencies)
-1 Police (freedom-loving)
+1 Nutrients in fungus squares
May not use Free Market economics.
Aggression Pacifist
Priorities Explore
Starting Tech Centauri Ecology
Agenda Green (Economics)
Aversion Free Market (Economics)

CONTROLLING SOCIETY
CHAPTER 5
124
HIVE

Faction Characteristics

+1 Growth (rapid population growth)
+1 Industry (brutal serfdom)
-2 Economy (little political freedom)
Underground bunkers (free Perimeter Defense at each base)
May not use Democratic politics.

Aggression Aggressive
Priorities Conquer, Build
Starting Tech Doctrine: Loyalty
Agenda Police State (Politics)
Aversion Democracy (Politics)

MORGAN INDUSTRIES

Faction Characteristics

+1 Economy (industrial conglomerate)
-1 Support (followers have expensive tastes)
Commerce (bonus increases value of treaties, pacts, loans)
Begins with 100 extra energy credits.
Need Hab Complex for bases to exceed size 4 (creature comforts at a premium).
May not use Planned Economics.

Aggression Pacifist
Priorities Build
Starting Tech Industrial Economics
Agenda Free Market (Economics)
Aversion Planned (Economics)

PEACEKEEPERS
Faction Characteristics

-1 Efficiency (U.N.-style bureaucracy)
Extra talent for every four citizens (attracts intellectual elite)
May exceed Hab Complex population requirements by 2.
Receives double votes in elections for Planetary Governor and Supreme Leader.
May not use Police State Politics.

Aggression: Erratic
Priorities: Explore, Discover
Starting Tech: Biogenetics
Agenda: Democracy (Politics)
Aversion: Police State (Politics)

SPARTANS

Faction Characteristics

+2 Morale (well armed survivalist movement)
+1 Police (highly disciplined followers)
-1 Industry (extravagant weapons are costly)
Prototype units do not cost extra minerals.
May not use Wealth value in Social Engineering.

Aggression: Erratic
Priorities: Discover, Conquer
Starting Tech: Doctrine: Mobility
Agenda: Power (Values)
Aversion: Wealth (Values)
UNIVERSITY

Faction Characteristics

+2 Research (brilliant research)
-2 Probe (academic networks vulnerable to infiltration)
Free network node at every base
One bonus tech at beginning of game
Extra drone for every four citizens (lack of ethics)
May not use Fundamentalist Politics.

Aggression: Erratic
Priorities: Discover
Starting Tech: Information Networks, +1 bonus tech
Agenda: Knowledge (Values)
Aversion: Fundamentalist (Politics)

DIPLOMATIC CONTACT

Before you can contact any of the other faction leaders, you must first have their commlink frequencies. This is usually gained by coming into direct contact with one of that faction’s units, but can also be gained from a third faction, or sometimes even found in a Unity pod. The Empath Guild Secret Project also grants you the comm frequency of every faction leader.

When one of your units or bases comes into contact with the unit or base of another faction for the first time, you usually open communications with the faction’s leader. If you talk to another leader once, you exchange comm frequencies. Once frequencies are exchanged, the other leader might contact you, or you can contact him or her using your Commlink menu (see Commlink, p. 23). When another leader calls, you don’t have to answer, and likewise he/she might sometimes ignore your communications (particularly in hostile situations). Once communications are underway, there are many options.
Sometimes communications are terse—a curt demand that a unit be removed from faction territory, or a to-the-point death threat—but many are quite involved conversations. At any point during communication you can consult the Datalinks for information about the faction, technology they may be requesting, or military units.

When you are in communication with another faction leader, he or she might start off by offering you an alliance against a common enemy, or offering to improve your diplomatic relations status (see Diplomatic Relations, facing page). They'll often offer to trade technology or world maps, and they'll frequently demand tribute of tech or energy (sometimes expressed as a “fine” for some unspecified infraction of their faction legalities). They'll often tell you about their latest military innovation, to let you know they're ready for trouble. They might even offer to end a vendetta between your factions. Once these preliminaries are over, it’s your turn. Your options are:

**OFFER A PROPOSAL**

Proposals that may be offered include:

- A gift, or “token of your esteem,” consisting of technology (one or all of your available technologies), energy credits, or even one of your bases. This makes a leader more friendly towards you, and if the gift is truly significant, she might forgive your past transgressions.

- Upgrading diplomatic relations (truce to treaty, or treaty to pact brotherhood). If your first proposal is accepted, you can try to upgrade again immediately.

- A request for technology, either as extortion or in trade.

- A request for energy credits, as extortion, in trade, or as a loan.

- A joint attack against a common enemy.

**EXCHANGE BATTLE PLANS**

You and the other faction leader discuss your immediate plans for battle, in order to coordinate your efforts. The other leader presents you with a list of targets, and you may select the target that you wish the other leader to attack.
CALL OFF VENDETTA
You request the other faction leader call off his or her vendetta against a third faction.

REQUEST VOTE
You request that the other faction leader support you in an upcoming council session. Often such support comes at a steep price.

TERRITORY VIOLATION
You demand that the other leader immediately remove all his or her units from your territory.

DIPLOMATIC RELATIONS
Your relations with any other faction at any given moment depend on a number of factors, including your social choices, your proximity to their territory, your military power, and of course your reputation and behavior during prior diplomatic communications. When a faction leader is in communication, you are given a one-word summary of that faction’s attitude towards you and of their reported military preparedness.

Mood
(best to worst)
Magnanimous (Submissive*)
Solicitous
Cooperative
Noncommittal
Ambivalent
Obstinate
Quarrelsome
Belligerent
Seething

Might
(strongest to weakest)
Unsurpassed
Potent
Formidable
Sufficient
Wanting
Anemic
Feeble
“This is a special case of Magnanimous, encountered when the faction is hopelessly overmatched.

Mood is based on several factors, including how honest you’ve been with that faction in the past, whether you’ve ever committed an atrocity against the faction, and how powerful you are in relation to that faction—faction leaders get touchy and defensive when someone else is far stronger than they are. Small factions often ally together to oppose very strong factions, even if the stronger faction has behaved honorably.

Once you are in communication with a faction, your relationship settles into one of four categories:

**VENDETTA**

A state of war exists. Each faction is under no obligation whatsoever to respect the other’s territory, and you can attack one another’s units and bases with impunity. Any loan payments are suspended.

**TRUCE**

A state of “watchful peace.” While the truce is in effect, the other faction may not honorably attack your units, but may move his units into your territory (you may attempt to threaten or cajole him into withdrawing). Loan payments are made on schedule.

**TREATY**

A state of peace and cooperation. Both factions are expected to keep military units out of the other’s territory (or at least remove them promptly when asked). The bases of two factions with a treaty conduct commerce with one another (see Commerce, facing page).

**PACT OF BROTHERHOOD**

A full diplomatic alliance. Both sides share their world maps, can access the other’s report readouts (see HQ Menu, p. 110), and may move freely through one another’s territory (zones of control do not apply between pact brothers).
Units from one faction may even visit the other’s bases for repairs and leave units in the same square. Income from commerce is increased. If one pact brother declares vendetta against a third faction, the pact partner is expected to do the same.

**COMMERCE**

If you have a treaty or pact with another faction, the two factions’ bases automatically conduct trade with one another. The amount of commerce income depends on your respective social choices and the size of the bases involved. Pact Brotherhood results in more profitable commerce than a simple treaty—commerce rates are doubled.

The largest bases in the two factions trade with one another, as do the two next largest, and so on until one side or the other runs out of bases.

**TERRITORY**

Any squares which are nearer to one of your bases than to any other faction’s base are considered your territory. Territory cannot extend more than seven squares out from a land base, or three squares out from sea bases, and must be on the same continent (or sea) as the base claiming it. Building a base close to another faction’s territory may cause boundaries to be re-drawn. It is entirely possible for bases from rival factions to be so close that the territorial boundary runs through both bases’ production radii.

**INTEGRITY**

As you interact with the other factions, you inevitably gain a reputation. This is based less on your belligerence than upon your honesty. You can attack literally everyone you see, but if you don’t break any treaties or commit any atrocities while doing so your honor remains unbesmirched.

The levels of integrity are:

- Noble
- Scrupulous
- Ruthless
- Faithful
- Dependable
- Treacherous
You can wreck your good name by breaking treaties and committing atrocities. If your integrity is towards the “treacherous” end of the scale, other factions are less likely to make deals with you, and more likely to break any treaties that do exist.

**PLANETARY COUNCIL**

The final tool of diplomacy on Planet is the Planetary Council. You can convene this body at any time, once you have the comm frequencies of all the factions.

No leader can call the council more than once every 20 years (except the planetary governor, who can call the council every ten years), and at each meeting it can consider only one proposal. (Electing a leader does not count against this limit, however.) No single proposal can be considered more than once every 20 years.

The first order of business for the council is probably electing a Planetary Governor. This post mostly consists of chairing council meetings, but the Governor does gain an increase to trade and better intelligence against the other factions. The most direct power of the Planetary Governor is the power of veto over any council actions—the governor’s veto can only be overridden if all of the other leaders unite against it. In the vote for Planetary Governor, it is entirely acceptable to cast your vote for yourself. When an election is called, you see whom each faction is publicly supporting for the election, but this may not be who they actually vote for.

In votes for Planetary Governor (and later, in votes for Supreme Leader), each faction is given a variable number of votes in council depending on its population. The voice of a larger, richer faction counts for far more than the voice of the small and weak. Only the leaders with the two largest vote totals are eligible to stand for Planetary Governor or Supreme Leader.

Other council actions are decided by simple majority vote (subject to veto by the Planetary Governor). Matters that may be brought before the council include:
• Salvage Unity Fusion Core. The rare elements from the Unity's core provide 500 energy credits to each faction.

• Global Trade Pact. Increases income from inter-faction commerce.

• Launch Solar Shade. Causes temperatures to drop worldwide, making sea levels go down.

• Melt Polar Caps. Causes global warming, making sea levels go up.

• Repeal UN Charter. All atrocity prohibitions are removed.

• Reinvest UN Charter. If the council chooses to repeal the charter, it can later vote to reinstate it.

Not all of these options are necessarily available at any given council meeting. Many of the more radical terraforming operations have prerequisite technologies that must be discovered before they can be proposed.

In your regular communications with other council members you may request that they vote your way in council. You can even offer them “special considerations” (bribes) in exchange for their votes.

PROBE TEAMS

Somewhere between war and diplomacy is the realm of the spy. Probe Teams combine espionage and electronic warfare, plus a fair dose of terrorism in their capabilities. An effectively coordinated program of Probe Team operations can, all by itself, give your faction a decisive advantage in the ongoing contest for supremacy.

Probe teams cannot attack other units directly, but they can battle one another to the death. Probe Team combat is based on the morale of the combatants. Probe Teams can attack other teams even in squares containing other units. Since Probe Teams have no “official” existence, destroying another faction’s Probe Teams does not violate a treaty or pact.
**PROBE TEAM ACTIONS**

Probe Teams are covert ops agents. They infiltrate the bases and territory of other factions and conduct espionage and sabotage.

Some Probe Team actions require an investment of energy. How much depends on the severity of the action and the enemy’s strength. Most major Probe Team actions are legitimate grounds for Vendetta and, in the event you are caught, may cause your reputation among the other factions to suffer (See *Integrity*, p. 131.)

When you initiate any Probe Team action, you are shown your chance of success, expressed as a pair of percentages (the higher your Probe Team’s morale, the better the odds). The first percentage shown is the team’s chance of completing the operation, the second is its chance of escaping alive. When a Probe Team enters a base or any square containing an enemy unit, it may attempt the following actions:

**INFORATE DATALINKS**

The probe team hacks into the faction’s Datalinks. This greatly increases your intelligence data about that faction, including access to their report readouts, and even individual base readouts.

**STEAL TECHNOLOGY**

Just what it says. You grab the other faction’s research technology. You may try for a specific technology, or grab one at random. Attempts to steal specific technology are much more difficult.

**SABOTAGE BASE**

You can either destroy an existing facility, wreck Planet Buster silos, or wipe out all minerals accrued towards that base’s current build orders. You may target a specific facility, or destroy something at random. Attempts to sabotage a specific facility are much more difficult. You cannot sabotage faction HQ or Secret Projects. Perimeter Defenses and Tachyon Fields are *extremely* hard to target.
MIND CONTROL

Mind control is an attempt to subvert a base or unit of a rival faction and bring it under your control.

The attractive aspect to unit mind control is that it’s one of the few probe activities that don’t need to be carried out from inside an enemy base—your Probe Team can lurk in the wilderness or near your territorial borders and swoop down to grab any unit that gets too close. Only single units may be targeted by Probe Teams. Multiple units in a square are invulnerable to mind control.

The *Total Thought Control* option is a variant of mind control that takes control of a base or unit, without causing any damage to your reputation with the other factions. It costs the same as normal mind control, but has a lower chance of success.

The cost of a mind control operation against a base depends on a number of factors, including the base’s size, the enemy’s energy reserves, facilities and special operations in a base, and whether or not drone riots are occurring.

A Probe Team cannot take control of a base containing a faction’s headquarters.

INCREASE DRONE ACTIVITY

This operation changes one Worker or Talent in the enemy base into a Drone. This is a useful preliminary operation to a mind control attempt, since a base embroiled in drone riots is significantly easier and less expensive to mind control.

DRAIN ENERGY RESERVES

This ambitious operation attempts to divert a portion of the faction’s energy reserves to your accounts. The more reserves the faction has, the more you stand to gain.

GENETIC WARFARE

This is considered a severe atrocity. A successful genetic warfare operation decreases the population of the base by a full 50%, instantaneously. Units inside the base also lose strength to the virus.
DEFENDING VS. PROBE TEAMS

Other than physically hunting them down and destroying them, your best defense against enemy Probe Teams is to boost your Probe rating through Social Engineering (see Society Window, below). Investing energy towards Psych also tends to deter Probe activities (see Energy Allocation, p. 117).

An excellent deterrent to enemy Probe Team activity is simply to station one of your own Probe Teams in strategically important bases. An enemy Probe Team must engage and destroy your team before it can undertake any further operations.

The Hunter-Seeker Algorithm Secret Project makes your entire faction immune to probe activity.

SOCIAL ENGINEERING

Your faction has a purpose, a reason for existing, and that purpose is more than just dominating all the other factions. Social engineering is the way you put your social and political philosophy into action. Every Social Engineering choice you make carries both benefits and liabilities for your faction. It is your job to see that the benefits support your long-term strategy, and the liabilities do not significantly detract from it.

Social engineering represents the fundamental defining characteristics of your faction’s society. The choices you make in regard to these fundamentals literally affect every aspect of your faction. Use [E] or select Social Engineering from your HQ menu to access the Social Engineering Readout.

SOCIETY WINDOW

The Society Window is the upper portion of your Social Engineering Readout (the bottom portion, dealing with Energy Allocation, is described under Energy Allocation, p. 117). This is where you actually pick the underpinnings of your society. It consists of four lines, each representing a fundamental decision, and four choices for each line. You may make one choice from each line. These choices determine your society’s base rating in each of the social factor
categories (see below). At the start of the game only the default values (Frontier, Simple, Survival, None) are available, and you have no choices to make. As your technology progresses, your options expand and you must choose how to continue.

Each choice’s effects on your social factors are displayed in the form of icons. Green icons are positive modifiers, red icons are negative modifiers.

There are several sub-windows on the Society Window. The one in the upper right displays the meaning of each category icon, and your current rating in each category. Also, if you on any one category, your social choices arrange themselves so that that category is optimized—“maxed out.” If you do this, make sure you look carefully at the other ratings, to make sure you haven’t created a dangerous deficit in some other category.

The window in the lower left simply provides a detailed breakdown of each choice, as you pass your cursor over that category. This window may be used by players who cannot read the color coding in the main window.

The window on the right is a detailed breakdown of the effects of your current choices in every category.
In the middle is a display showing your current energy reserves, the time between new technologies, and the upheaval cost, if any (see Upheaval Costs, below), to switch to the new choices you have tentatively selected.

You can always hit RESET to restore your choices to the way they were at the start of the turn.

Upheaval Costs. When you try to make a radical shift in political philosophy, there’s going to be some social upheaval. To get your faction “over the hump” to the new order, you may be required to pay some energy credits. This is called an “upheaval cost.” You can eliminate or mitigate it by slowing down your rate of change, making the move to the final new order gradually over a number of turns.

POLITICS

How your faction reaches policy decisions.

- **Frontier.** The default. Frontier politics represent the informal governing arrangements made in early colonies, before populations reach levels requiring more advanced forms of government. No positives or negatives.

- **Police State.** Police states use oppression to keep their citizens in line, and allow their leaders great power over military decisions. However, oppression of this sort also decreases economic efficiency. +2 Support, +2 Police, -2 Efficiency

- **Democratic.** Democracies allow citizens to participate in government, and forego oppression and the stability it confers in favor of growth and efficiency. However, citizens remain suspicious of large military deployments, and civilian oversight creates large military bureaucracies, so military support costs increase. +2 Efficiency, +2 Growth, -2 Support

- **Fundamentalist.** Fundamentalist politics unite a society behind a strong, dogmatic religion. Evangelizing the populace can create loyal, even fanatical military forces, and tends to immunize citizens against (other forms of) brainwashing. However, technological research tends to suffer under the continual assaults on intellectual integrity associated with such regimes. +2 Probe, +1 Morale, -2 Research
ECONOMICS

How your faction administers its resources.

- **Simple.** The default. Simple economics describes the informal, ad hoc economy that develops in the early years after planetfall, before more organized economic systems can be put in place. **No positives or negatives.**

- **Free Market.** Free market economics turns market forces loose in your society. Unfettered market economics can produce great wealth quickly, but in the context of Planet’s fragile emerging economies can also lead to extremes of pollution and ecological damage. Also, citizens rendered suddenly poor by the actions of unscrupulous moguls may revolt against their energy-fattened masters. **+2 Economy, -3 Planet, -5 Police**

- **Planned.** A semi-market economy kept in check by fierce governmental regulation, planned economics promotes stable industrial and population growth, but sacrifices efficiency. **+2 Growth, +1 Industry, -2 Efficiency**

- **Green.** Green economics strive to integrate human progress with the needs of the biosphere. Green economies use resources efficiently and tend to avoid the excesses of industrial development which could provoke Planet’s native life, but population growth necessarily suffers due to lack of space. **+2 Efficiency, +2 Planet, -2 Growth**

VALUES

The goals your society thinks are most important.

- **Survival.** Simple survival is, of course, the all-encompassing first priority of early human space colonies. **No positives or negatives.**

- **Power.** Leaders seeking power build strong, well paid military forces to enforce their will. However, economic and industrial infrastructure may suffer from bloated “defense” budgets. **+2 Support, +2 Morale, -2 Industry**

- **Knowledge.** Leaders seeking knowledge and intellectual enlightenment pour resources into research and education. They also tend to promote the
free exchange of information, which increases efficiency but also carries greater security risks. **+2 Research, +1 Efficiency, -2 Probe**

- **Wealth.** Leaders seeking wealth concentrate on building economic and industrial infrastructure rapidly. They achieve rapid growth and development, with possible side effects being decadence and moral decay. **+1 Economy, +1 Industry, -2 Morale**

**FUTURE SOCIETY**

Powerful doctrines of social development arising from advanced theories of Social Engineering.

- **None.** The default. Your society has not yet evolved to a far future society. No positives or negatives.

- **Cybernetic.** In the far future, citizens may turn many of the tasks of governing society over to artificially intelligent computers, increasing efficiency and freeing humans for more creative tasks. But will workers displaced by computers sink into despair, poverty, and possible unrest? **+2 Efficiency, +2 Planet, +2 Research, -3 Police**

- **Eudaimonic.** Perhaps the most pleasant to contemplate living in, this far future society takes its name from an ancient Greek word for fulfillment and happiness. Eudaimonic society encourages each citizen to achieve happiness through striving to fulfill completely his or her potential. Population, economy and industry all experience healthy growth. Violence fades as society grows more tolerant and just, and even when this society’s hand is forced it often shoots to subdue rather than to destroy. **+2 Economy, +2 Growth, +2 Industry, -2 Morale**

- **Thought Control.** The ultimate in “Big Brother” methods, thought control effuses subtle neurochemical triggers into the atmosphere to render its population obedient, loyal and resistant to outside ideas. However, significant resources are required to maintain this level of control. **+2 Morale, +2 Police, +2 Probe, -3 Support**
SOCIAL FACTORS

Your faction possesses a numerical ranking (negative, positive or zero) in each of the following categories. Positive ratings represent assets of your society, negative ratings are liabilities. The specific results of each ranking in each factor are found in the table in Appendix 2: Social Factors, p. 158.

Although they’re most directly determined by your social choices (see Society Window, p. 136), these ratings are also directly affected by your original faction philosophy, and several Secret Projects. Several base facilities can change the ratings for that base only. Children’s Creche, for example, increases the Growth rating for each base that builds one.

ECONOMY

Increases or decreases energy production by squares and by base; also increases or decreases commerce income (see Commerce, p. 131).

EFFICIENCY

Increases or decreases loss due to inefficiency or modification of energy allocation (see Energy Allocation, p. 117).

SUPPORT

Increases or decreases the cost to support units outside of your base. High ratings can give you a number of units that can be supported “for free” (see Home Base, Support and Pacifism, p. 89).

MORALE

Increases or decreases the morale of your units. Negative values can actually decrease the combat readiness of units (see Morale/Lifecycle, p. 87).
POLICE

Determines the number of units that can act as police (see Drone Riots, p. 63) in your bases. Factions with a Police rating of ñ3 or less are considered Pacifist, and produce more drones when units are stationed outside the base (see Home Base, Support and Pacifism, p. 89).

GROWTH

Speeds or slows your population growth rate (see Nutrient Tanks, p. 68).

PLANET

Negative scores increase ecological damage. Positive scores decrease damage, enhance your ability to move through fungus, and give you the power to tame indigenous life-forms (see Fauna, p. 40). Your Planet rating also affects your units’ skill at Psi combat (see Psi Combat, p. 102).

PROBE

Can increase probe team morale. Increases or decreases your faction’s susceptibility to probe actions (see Probe Teams, p. 133).

INDUSTRY

Increases or decreases the mineral costs of base projects (see Build Orders, p. 67).

RESEARCH

Speeds or slows your acquisition of new technology (see Technology, p. 119).
RESIGNING

You may retire as faction leader at any time by selecting “Resign” from the Game menu. This ends the game and computes your *Sid Meier’s Alpha Centauri* score.

You must also resign if you reach the mandatory retirement year for your game or scenario. In standard games, the mandatory retirement year is M.Y. 2500 for Citizen, Specialist and Talent difficulty levels, and M.Y. 2400 for Librarian, Thinker and Transcend levels.

You will be warned 20 years before you reach mandatory retirement.

WINNING THE GAME

There are four ways to win *Sid Meier’s Alpha Centauri*—conquest, diplomatic, economic or transcendence—depending on how you set your options in the setup screens.

If you are playing a scenario, it may have specific and unique victory conditions different from those listed.

CONQUEST

You may win the game by conquest if you eliminate all remaining factions. Factions that surrender and “swear a pact to serve you” count as eliminated for this purpose. If Cooperative Victory is enabled, you need not eliminate any faction with whom you have signed a Pact of Brotherhood, though no more than three non-surrendered factions may ‘win together’ in this manner.

DIPLOMATIC

You may win the game diplomatically by convincing enough faction leaders to unite behind you as Supreme Leader of Planet. A 3/4 vote of the Planetary Council is required to secure such election. Only the leader of one of the two factions with the highest vote totals may stand for election as Supreme Leader.
When a Supreme Leader is elected, a faction leader may choose to defy the will of the Council and refuse to submit. In this case, the Supreme Leader must, with the help of loyal factions, conquer all defiant factions to achieve a Conquest victory. Because of the military power usually required to secure election as Supreme Leader, defying the will of the Council is generally fairly suicidal. Other factions will therefore usually take this course only if you have committed atrocities against them or have grossly and repeatedly betrayed them.

You must have the Mind\Machine Interface technology before you can try for a Diplomatic Victory.

**ECONOMIC**

You may win an Economic Victory by cornering the Global Energy Market. You must have discovered Planetary Economics in order to pursue such a plan.

Cornering the Global Energy Market requires a sum of energy credits roughly equal to the cost to “mind control” every remaining base on Planet. When you are ready to make such an attempt, select Corner Global Energy Market from the HQ menu.

When a faction attempts to corner the Global Energy Market, all other factions are given an allotted period of time in which they can capture or destroy the cornering faction’s headquarters and thereby foil the plan.

**TRANSCENDENCE**

The highest form of victory is the Ascent to Transcendence, the next step in the evolution of humanity. In order to ascend, you must complete an extraordinary Secret Project—the Ascent to Transcendence—which can be started only after at least one faction has completed the Voice of Planet Secret Project.
SCORING

Whether you resign or win outright, each game is given a numerical score. You can check your current score at any time with F8, or the Alpha Centauri Score option on the HQ Menu (see, p. 110).

Your Alpha Centauri Score is computed as follows:

- 1 point for each citizen of each base.
- If you have won a Diplomatic or Economic victory, score 1 point for each citizen of a Pact Brother’s base.
- 1/2 point for each citizen of any other faction’s base.
- 1/2 point for each citizen of a surrendered base.
- 1 point for each unit of commerce your bases are receiving.
- 1 point for each technology discovered.
- 10 points for each tech advance after Transcendent Thought.
- 25 points for each Secret Project.
- A Victory bonus if you have won the game (see Winning the Game, p. 143):

  For winning by Conquest, you are awarded 1000 points minus 2 for every game turn elapsed. If Cooperative Victory is enabled, all Pact Brothers and Sisters participate in the win, and points are split between all winning factions based on relative population. A maximum of three Pact Brothers and Sisters may join in a win by conquest, not including those factions that have surrendered along the way.

  If you win a Diplomatic Victory, you are awarded 1200 points minus 2 for every game turn elapsed. If Cooperative Victory is enabled and your Pact Brother or Sister is elected Supreme Leader, you are awarded half this total.

  For Economic Victory, you are awarded 1200 points minus 2 for every game turn elapsed. If Cooperative Victory is enabled, Pact Brothers and Sisters of the winning faction receive half the bonus points.
Players who *Ascend to Transcendence* are awarded 1600 points minus 2 for every game turn elapsed. If Cooperative Victory is enabled, all Pact Brothers and Sisters participate in the win, and points are split between all winning factions based on relative population.

In any cooperative victory, the overall winner receives 1/2 the points of every allied faction’s population score.
NOTES AND TIPS

GENERAL TIPS

• Pick your faction wisely. The bonuses and penalties intrinsic to each faction may seem minor, but they exert a constant influence on the faction’s development throughout the entire game. Therefore, you want to select a faction where the abilities are an asset to your personal style and long-term strategy, rather than a detriment.

• Don’t be afraid to use the governors and automate units. This can make gameplay flow much more smoothly, without reducing your actual control over your units and bases in any significant fashion.

• Watch how you place your bases. Try to use all the resources from as many squares as possible. Don’t place bases directly within one another’s production radius, but it’s okay to let the radii overlap a bit. Try not to let any potentially productive squares go to waste.

• Build several colony pods early in the game, to give your faction some territory as quickly as possible. From a strategic perspective, it’s never a good idea to have all your eggs in one basket. Plus, more bases gives you bigger energy reserves, faster tech research, and increased capacity to produce Secret Projects and offensive units.

• When you start a base, build a defensive unit right away (more than one, at higher levels of play). Also build at least one former per base.

• Make sure to build several bases on the coast. This allows your faction to produce sea-based units.

• Never forget that units can hide in fungus.

• Explore as much as you can early on, while rival factions are small and relatively friendly and mind worms are young and wimpy.
• Don’t mess with your economy settings until drones actually start to become a problem in your bases (and even then, see if you can take care of the problem with social choices or simple facilities first).

• A good basic strategy for building base facilities is simply to build the cheapest ones first. However, you might want to concentrate on network node (particularly if you have an artifact, or expect to build the Virtual World Secret Project) and hab complex (if your population is growing quickly). Do not build pressure domes or punishment spheres unless you know exactly what they’re for and are certain they’re what you want (see Appendix 2: Facilities, p. 163)—these facilities are useful only in specialized circumstances, and the punishment sphere can actually hold you back in specific ways.

• The more Secret Projects you can hog for yourself, the better. Even the ones you don’t plan to use are useful, because you’re keeping them away from some other faction.

• The earliest Secret Projects are among the most useful, particularly the Human Genome Project and the Virtual World, both of which can give your faction a power edge in stability.

• Plant forests to make arid squares productive. Plant some early to give them time to grow.

• If a rival wants to trade technology, trade technology. Every tech advance helps your faction, and an even trade is a good deal—it puts you that much ahead of the other factions not involved in the trade.

• If your faction achieves clear dominance over the other factions, call an election and make yourself Planetary Governor. It’s worth it for the trade windfall alone.

• Secrets of the Human Brain can give you an important tech edge in the early part of the game. Unfortunately (for the other factions), the University and the Peacekeepers are about the only factions with a realistic shot at it. All other factions require some major luck to get this tech first (though it can happen).
## Terraforming Enhancements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name (Sea Name)</th>
<th>Prerequisite Technology</th>
<th>Turns to Build</th>
<th>Keystroke</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Farm (Kelp Farm)</td>
<td>Centauri Ecology (Doctrine: Flexibility)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soil Enricher</td>
<td>Adv. Ecological Engineering</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mine (Mining Platform)</td>
<td>Centauri Ecology (Doctrine: Flexibility)</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solar Collector (Tidal Harness)</td>
<td>Centauri Ecology (Doctrine: Flexibility)</td>
<td>6 (4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forest</td>
<td>Centauri Ecology</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Shift F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Road</td>
<td>Centauri Ecology</td>
<td>Variable</td>
<td>R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mag Tube</td>
<td>Monopole Magnets</td>
<td>Variable</td>
<td>R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bunker</td>
<td>Adv. Military Algorithms</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Airbase</td>
<td>Doctrine: Air Power</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Shift &gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sensor Array</td>
<td>Centauri Ecology</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remove Fungus (Sea Fungus)</td>
<td>Centauri Ecology (Doctrine: Flexibility)</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plant Fungus (Sea Fungus)</td>
<td>Ecological Engineering (Doctrine: Flexibility)</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Ctrl F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Condenser</td>
<td>Ecological Engineering</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### RESOURCE PRODUCTION TABLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Underlying Terrain</th>
<th>Nutrients</th>
<th>Minerals</th>
<th>Energy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Raininess</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arid</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moist</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rainy</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rockiness</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flat</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rolling</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rocky</td>
<td>0&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Elevation</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1-4&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ocean</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>1</sup> Includes rockiness

<sup>2</sup> Includes elevation
Fixed Squares

(The production of the following squares is fixed, regardless of underlying terrain.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Underlying Terrain</th>
<th>Nutrients</th>
<th>Minerals</th>
<th>Energy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Base</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forest (1)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monolith</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thermal Borehole</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fungus (4)</td>
<td>0-2</td>
<td>0-2</td>
<td>0-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note: bases get resource bonuses as well</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Modifiers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Modifier</th>
<th>Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>River</td>
<td>+1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Farm</td>
<td>+1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kelp Farm</td>
<td>+2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soil Enricher</td>
<td>+1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Condenser</td>
<td>+1 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Echelon Mirror</td>
<td>+1 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tidal Harness</td>
<td>+2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mine (7)</td>
<td>-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Road (8)</td>
<td>+1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mining Platform</td>
<td>+1 or 2 (10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Underlying Terrain</td>
<td>Nutrients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nutrient Bonus</td>
<td>+2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mineral Bonus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Energy Bonus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recycling Tanks (^{(11)})</td>
<td>+1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Rocky terrain negates all nutrient production from raininess.
2. In order to harvest energy based on a square’s elevation, the square must have a solar collector. Squares with solar collectors yield 1 energy for each thousand meters above sea level, starting at 1 for squares 0 to 1,000 meters above sea level, up to 4 for squares over 3,000 meters above sea level.
3. Harvesting a forest square (i.e., building any enhancement other than a road in that square) yields a one-time bonus of 5 minerals. Tree Farm and Hybrid Forest facilities each increase nutrient production in forest squares within that base’s production radius.
4. Your ability to extract resources from fungus improves as you acquire new technologies. See Fungus, p. XX.
5. Also raises the raininess by one increment in a two-square radius.
6. Also provides +1 energy to every adjacent square with a solar collector.
7. A mine will not reduce nutrient production to zero.
8. +1 in rolling terrain, +2 in rocky terrain, +3 in rocky with road.
9. Roads provide +1 minerals in rocky squares with a mine (total bonus from road and mine: +3). Roads do not provide a bonus to mines in rolling terrain.
10. Bonus is +1 until the discovery of Advanced Ecological Engineering, +2 thereafter.
11. Recycling tanks only affect the central base square.
# Terrain Effects on Movement

**Rocky or Forest square**  2 movement points to enter (however, these squares can always be entered by any unit having at least one full movement point remaining).

**Sea fungus square**  3 movement points to enter (however, these squares can always be entered by any unit having at least one full movement point remaining).

**Land fungus square**  Trying to enter a land fungus square (successfully or not) always ends your unit’s movement, unless the unit is a mind worm boil, or your faction possesses the Xenoempathy Dome Secret Project.

These penalties have no effect if moving across the square on a road or mag tube.

**Road square**  1/3 movement point.

**Magtube square**  no movement point cost to follow a magtube.

**River movement**  1/3 movement point.

**Air units.**  Terrain has no effect on the movement of air units.
TERRAIN EFFECTS ON COMBAT

Xenofungus provides concealment (see Flora, p. 39).

Artillery. +25% attack bonus per level of altitude (see Artillery Combat, p. 100).

Mobile units in smooth or rolling terrain. +25% attack bonus.

Any unit in rocky terrain. +50% defensive bonus.

Any unit in xenofungus. +50% defensive bonus, unless it is being attacked by a native life-form (either human-spawned or “wild”) in which case the unit gets no defensive bonus (see next entry).

Any native life-form in xenofungus. +50% combat bonus
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SOCIAL FACTORS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ECONOMY</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Efficiency</th>
<th>Energy/Resource Impact</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-4</td>
<td>Economic Paralysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-3</td>
<td>Murderous inefficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-2</td>
<td>Appalling inefficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-1</td>
<td>Gross inefficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>High inefficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Reasonable efficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Commendable efficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Exemplary efficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>PARADIGM ECONOMY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-3</td>
<td>-2 energy each base</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-2</td>
<td>-1 energy each base</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-1</td>
<td>-1 energy at HQ base</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Standard energy rates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>+1 energy each base</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>+1 energy each square</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>+1 energy each square; +1 commerce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>+1 energy/sq; +2 energy/base; +2 commerce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>+1 energy/sq; +4 energy/base; +3 commerce</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SUPPORT

-4 Each unit costs 2 to support; no free minerals for new base.
-3 Each unit costs 1 to support; no free minerals for new base.
-2 Support 1 unit free per base; no free minerals for new base.
-1 Support 1 unit free per base
0 Support 2 units free per base
1 Support 3 units free per base
2 Support 4 units free per base
3 Support 4 units OR up to base size for free

MORALE

-4 -3 Morale; + modifiers halved
-3 -2 Morale; + modifiers halved
-2 -1 Morale; + modifiers halved
-1 -1 Morale
0 Normal Morale
1 +1 Morale
2 +1 Morale (+2 on defense)
3 +2 Morale (+3 on defense)
4 +3 Morale
### POLICE

-5 Two extra drones for each military unit away from base
-4 Extra drone for each military unit away from base
-3 Extra drone if more than one military unit away from base
-2 Cannot use military units as police. No nerve stapling.
-1 One police unit allowed. No nerve stapling.
0 Can use one military unit as police
1 Can use up to 2 military units as police
2 Can use up to 3 military units as police
3 3 units as police. Police effect doubled

### GROWTH

-3 ZERO POPULATION GROWTH
-2 -20% growth rate
-1 -10% growth rate
0 Normal growth rate
1 +10% growth rate
2 +20% growth rate
3 +30% growth rate
4 +40% growth rate
5 +50% growth rate
6 POPULATION BOOM
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLANET</th>
<th>PROBE TEAMS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-3 Wanton ecological disruption; -3 fungus production</td>
<td>-2 -50% cost of enemy probe team actions; enemy success rate increased</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-2 Rampant ecological disruption; -2 fungus production</td>
<td>-1 -25% cost of enemy probe team actions; enemy success rate increased</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-1 Increased ecological disruption; -1 fungus production</td>
<td>0 Normal security measures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0 Normal ecological tension</td>
<td>1 +1 probe team morale; +50% cost of enemy probe team actions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Ecological safeguards; mind worm capture 25%</td>
<td>2 +2 probe team morale; doubles cost of enemy probe team actions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Ecological harmony; mind worm capture 50%</td>
<td>3 +3 probe team morale; bases and units cannot be subverted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Ecological wisdom; mind worm capture 75%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDUSTRY</td>
<td>RESEARCH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-3</td>
<td>-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mineral costs increased by 30%</td>
<td>Labs research slowed by 50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-2</td>
<td>-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mineral costs increased by 20%</td>
<td>Labs research slowed by 40%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-1</td>
<td>-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mineral costs increased by 10%</td>
<td>Labs research slowed by 30%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normal production rate</td>
<td>Labs research slowed by 20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mineral costs decreased by 10%</td>
<td>Labs research slowed by 10%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mineral costs decreased by 20%</td>
<td>Normal research rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mineral costs decreased by 30%</td>
<td>Labs research speeded by 10%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mineral costs decreased by 40%</td>
<td>Labs research speeded by 20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mineral costs decreased by 50%</td>
<td>Labs research speeded by 30%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Labs research speeded by 40%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Labs research speeded by 50%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### FACILITIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Facility</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Maint</th>
<th>Prerequisite Tech</th>
<th>Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aerospace Complex</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Doctrine: Air Power</td>
<td>+2 Morale: Air; Air Def +100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bioenhancement Center</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Neural Grafting</td>
<td>+2 Morale: ALL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biology Lab</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Centauri Empathy</td>
<td>Research and Psi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centauri Preserve</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Centauri Meditation</td>
<td>Ecology Bonus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Children’s Creche</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Ethical Calculus</td>
<td>Growth/Effic/Morale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command Center</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>Var.</td>
<td>Doctrine: Mobility</td>
<td>+2 Morale:Land</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Energy Bank</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Industrial Economics</td>
<td>Economy Bonus; free with Quantum Mach.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fusion Lab</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Fusion Power</td>
<td>Econ and Labs Bonus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genejack Factory</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Retroviral Engineering</td>
<td>Minerals; More Drones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hab Complex</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Industrial Automation</td>
<td>Increase Population Limit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Habitation Dome</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Super Tensile Solids</td>
<td>Increase Population Limit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headquarters</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Efficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hologram Theatre</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Planetary Networks</td>
<td>Psych and Fewer Drones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Facility</td>
<td>Cost</td>
<td>Maint</td>
<td>Prerequisite Tech</td>
<td>Effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hybrid Forest</td>
<td>240</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Planetary Economics</td>
<td>Econ/Psych/Forest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nanohospital</td>
<td>240</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Homo Superior</td>
<td>Labs and Psych Bonus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nanoreplicator</td>
<td>320</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Matter Editation</td>
<td>Minerals Bonus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Naval Yard</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Doctrine: Initiative</td>
<td>+2 Morale;Sea Sea Def +100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nessus Mining Station</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Self-Aware Machines</td>
<td>+1 Minerals ALL BASES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network Node</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Information Networks</td>
<td>Labs Bonus; free with Self-Aware Mach.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orbital Defense Pod</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Self-Aware Machines</td>
<td>Missile Defense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orbital Power Transmitter</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Advanced Spaceflight</td>
<td>+1 Energy ALL BASES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paradise Garden</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Sentient Econometrics</td>
<td>+2 Talents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perimeter Defense</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Doctrine: Loyalty</td>
<td>Defense +100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pressure Dome</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Doctrine: Flexibility</td>
<td>Submersion/Resources</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psi Gate</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Matter Transmission</td>
<td>Teleport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Punishment Sphere</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Adv. Military Algorithms</td>
<td>No Drones/-50% Tech</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quantum Converter</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Quantum Machinery</td>
<td>Minerals Bonus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Facility</td>
<td>Cost</td>
<td>Maint</td>
<td>Prerequisite Tech</td>
<td>Effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quantum Lab</td>
<td>240</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Quantum Power</td>
<td>Econ and Labs Bonus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recreation Commons</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Social Psych</td>
<td>Fewer Drones; free with Sent. Econometrics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recycling Tanks</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Biogenetics</td>
<td>Bonus Resources; free with Adv. Ecol. Engin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Research Hospital</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Gene Splicing</td>
<td>Labs and Psych Bonus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Robotic Assembly Plant</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Industrial Nanorobotics</td>
<td>Minerals Bonus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skunkworks</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Adv. Subatomic Theory</td>
<td>Prototypes Free</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sky Hydroponics Lab</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Orbital Spaceflight</td>
<td>+1 Nutrient ALL BASES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stockpile Energy</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Minerals to Energy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tachyon Field</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Probability Mechanics</td>
<td>All Defense +100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temple of Planet</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Secrets</td>
<td>Ecology Bonus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>of Alpha Centauri</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tree Farm</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Environmental Economics</td>
<td>Econ/Psych/Forest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Aerospace Complex. Repairs damaged air units quickly. Air units built here receive two morale upgrades. Base must have an Aerospace complex before it can produce space-based facilities.

Bioenhancement Center. All military units built here receive two morale upgrades. Any alien life-forms you breed at this base gain a +1 lifecycle bonus.

Biology Lab. +2 research per turn. Any alien life-forms you breed at this base gain a +1 lifecycle bonus.

Centauri Preserve. Reduces effect of industry on Planet’s ecology. Any alien life-forms you breed at this base gain a +1 lifecycle bonus.

Children’s Creche. Base receives +2 on growth scale and +2 on efficiency scale. All negative morale effects are cancelled for units in base square; instead such units receive a +1 morale modifier. Reduces base’s vulnerability to enemy mind control.

Command Center. Repairs damaged ground units quickly. Ground units built here receive two morale upgrades.

Energy Grid. Increases energy reserves at base by 50%.

Fusion Lab. Increases energy reserves at base by 50% and research at base by 50%.

Genejack Factory. Increases minerals output at base by 50%, but also increases the number of drones at base by one and increases vulnerability to enemy mind control. Cumulative with all other facilities of this type.

Hab Complex. Allows population of base to grow beyond size 7.

Habitation Dome. Allows population of base to grow beyond size 14. Base must already have Hab Complex.

Headquarters. Administrative center of your colony. +1 energy. No inefficiency. Enemy probe teams may not attempt mind control here.

Hologram Theatre. Reduces number of drones by two, and increases psych output of base by 50%.
Hybrid Forest. Increases nutrient and energy output of forest squares. Increases psych at base by 50% and energy reserves at base by 50%, and, combined with Tree Farm, eliminates the ecological damage caused by terraforming. Cumulative with Tree Farm.

Nanohospital. Increases psych at base by 25% and research at base by 50% and reduces number of drones by one. Reduces population loss caused by genetic warfare and other disease outbreaks. Cumulative with Research Hospital.

Nanoreplicator. Increases minerals output at base by 50%. Cumulative with all other facilities of this type.

Naval Base. Repairs damaged naval units quickly. Naval units built here receive two morale upgrades.

Nessus Mining Station. Each Nessus Mining Station increases the minerals output of every base by +1. Can only be produced by bases with Aerospace Complexes. Minerals bonus is halved for bases without Aerospace Complexes, and cannot in any event exceed the size of the base.

Network Node. Increases research at base by 50%. Base can study alien artifacts.

Orbital Defense Pod. Each undeployed Orbital Defense Pod has a 50% chance to prevent a Planet Buster attack against any of your bases. Defense pods may only deploy once per turn; when no undeployed pods remain, a Planet Buster can only be stopped by sacrificing one of the already-deployed pods.

Orbital Power Transmitter. Each Orbital Power Transmitter increases the energy output of every base by +1. Can only be produced by bases with Aerospace Complexes. Energy bonus is halved for bases without Aerospace Complexes, and cannot in any event exceed the size of the base.

Paradise Dome. Two extra talents at this base.

Perimeter Defense. Increases defense multiplier of base by one. This effectively doubles defense strength (or triples it when combined with a Tachyon Field).
Pressure Dome. Allows base to survive submersion. Also counts as Recycling Tanks for this base.

Psi Gate. Units can teleport between bases containing Psi Gates.

Punishment Sphere. Eliminates both drones and talents at this base, and decreases vulnerability to enemy mind control, but reduces labs output by 1/2.

Quantum Converter. Increases minerals output at base by 50%. Cumulative with all other facilities of this type.

Quantum Lab. Increases energy reserves at base by 50% and labs at base by 50%. Cumulative with Fusion Lab.

Recreation Dome. Reduces number of drones in colony by two.

Recycling Tanks. Increases nutrient, minerals and energy output of base square.

Research Hospital. Increases psych at base by 25% and research at base by 50% and reduces number of drones by one. Reduces population loss caused by genetic warfare and other disease outbreaks.

Robotic Assembly Plant. Increases minerals output at base by 50%. Cumulative with all other facilities of this type.

Skunkworks. Eliminates additional cost to prototype new units at this base.

Sky Hydroponics. Each Sky Hydroponics Lab increases the nutrient output of every base by +1. Can only be produced by bases with Aerospace Complexes. Nutrient increase is halved for bases without Aerospace Complexes, and cannot in any event exceed the size of the base.

Stockpile Energy. All minerals produced at base are immediately converted to energy reserves (each 2 minerals makes 1 energy).

Tachyon Field. Increases defense multiplier of base by one. This is cumulative with Perimeter Defense, for a net tripling of defense strength at base.
Temple of Planet. Reduces effect of industry on Planet’s ecology. Any alien life-forms you breed at this base gain a +1 lifecycle bonus. Cumulative with Centauri Preserve.

Tree Farm. Increases psych output at base by 50% and energy reserves at base by 50%. Increases nutrient output in forest squares. Halves the ecological damage caused by terraforming (farms, mines, roads, etc.).
## Secret Projects

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Secret Project</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Prerequisite Technology</th>
<th>Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ascent to Transcendence</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>Threshold of Transcendence</td>
<td>End of Human Era</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ascetic Virtues</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>Planetary Economics</td>
<td>Pop. Limit Relaxed; +1 Police</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bulk Matter Transmitter</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>Matter Transmission</td>
<td>+2 Minerals Every Base</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citizens’ Defense Force</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>Intellectual Integrity</td>
<td>Perimeter Defense Each Base</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical Immortality</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>Matter Editation</td>
<td>Extra Talent Every Base</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cloning Vats</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>Biomachinery</td>
<td>Population Boom At All Bases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command Nexus</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>Doctrine: Loyalty</td>
<td>Command Center Each Base</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyborg Factory</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>Mind/Machine Interface</td>
<td>Bioenh. Center Every Base</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dream Twister</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>The Will to Power</td>
<td>Psi Attack +50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Empath Guild</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>Centauri Empathy</td>
<td>Commlink For Every Faction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Human Genome Project</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>Biogenetics</td>
<td>+1 Talent Each Base</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hunter-Seeker Algorithm</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>Pre-Sentient Algorithms</td>
<td>Immunity to Probe Teams</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Living Refinery</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>Advanced Spaceflight</td>
<td>+2 Support (social)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Longevity Vaccine</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>Bio-Engineering</td>
<td>Fewer Drones or More Profits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maritime Control Center</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>Doctrine: Initiative</td>
<td>Naval Movement +2; Naval Bases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Merchant Exchange</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>Industrial Base</td>
<td>+1 Energy Each Square Here</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secret Project</td>
<td>Cost</td>
<td>Prerequisite Technology</td>
<td>Effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nano Factory</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>Industrial Nanorobotics</td>
<td>Repair Units; Low Upgrade Costs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network Backbone</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>Digital Sentience</td>
<td>+1 Lab Per Commerce/Net Node</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neural Amplifier</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>Neural Grafting</td>
<td>Psi Defense +50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pholus Mutagen</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>Centauri Genetics</td>
<td>Ecology Bonus; Lifecycle Bonus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Planetary Datalinks</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>Cyberethics</td>
<td>Any Tech Known To 3 Others</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Planetary Transit System</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>Industrial Automation</td>
<td>New Bases Begin At Size 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Self-Aware Colony</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>Self-Aware Machines</td>
<td>Maintenance Halved; Extra Police</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Singularity Inductor</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>Controlled Singularity</td>
<td>Quantum Converter Every Base</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Space Elevator</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>Super Tensile Solids</td>
<td>Energy +100%/Orbital Cost Halved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supercollider</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>Applied Relativity</td>
<td>Labs +100% At This Base</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Telepathic Matrix</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>Eudaimonia</td>
<td>No More Drone Riots; +2 Probe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theory of Everything</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>Unified Field Theory</td>
<td>Labs +100% At This Base</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Universal Translator</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>Homo Superior</td>
<td>Two Free Techs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virtual World</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>Planetary Networks</td>
<td>Network Nodes Help Drones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voice of Planet</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>Threshold of Transcendence</td>
<td>Begins Ascent To Transcendence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weather Paradigm</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>Centauri Ecology</td>
<td>Terraform Rate +50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xenoempathy Dome</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>Centauri Meditation</td>
<td>Fungus Movement Bonus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Ascent to Transcendence. Completes the Transcendence sequence and ends the Human Era. The Ascent cannot be started until the Voice of Planet is operational.

Ascetic Virtues. Increases the population limit of your bases by two, and increases your society’s tolerance for use of police and military units (+1 Police).

Bulk Matter Transmitter. +2 minerals at every base.


Clinical Immortality. One extra talent at every base. Doubles your votes in elections for Planetary Governor and Supreme Leader.

Cloning Vats. All of your bases enter a permanent state of Population Boom and will grow every turn provided nutrient output is sufficient and hab facilities are adequate. The negative effects of the power and thought control social engineering choices are eliminated.

Command Nexus. Counts as a Command Center at every one of your bases.

Cyborg Factory. Counts as a Bioenhancement Center at every base.

Dream Twister. +50% to Psi Attack.

Empath Guild. Allows you to contact any leader, and gives you an infiltrator in every faction. You get +50% votes in elections for Planetary Governor and Supreme Leader.

Human Genome Project. One extra talent at every base.

Hunter-Seeker Algorithm. Renders your units and bases completely immune to probe team infiltration of any kind.

Living Refinery. Decreases minerals required to support military units: +2 Support on Social Engineering table.

Longevity Vaccine. Two less drones at every base if your society’s economics are planned. One less drone at every base if economics are simple or green. Energy reserves increased by 50% at this base for free market economies.
Maritime Control Center. Increases the movement rate of all naval units by two, and counts as a Naval Yard at every one of your bases.

Merchant Exchange. +1 energy in every square at this base.

Nano Factory. Units can be repaired quickly and completely even when not in base squares. The cost to upgrade units is reduced by 50%.

Network Backbone. +1 research at this base for every point of Commerce this base receives, and +1 research for every Network Node in existence on Alpha Centauri, regardless of the player owning the Network Node. Eliminates the negative effects of Cybernetic Society.

Neural Amplifier. +50% to Psi Defense.

Pholus Mutagen. Reduces effect of industry on Planet’s ecology at all of your bases. Additionally, the fungus confers on all of your units the same combat benefits normally reserved for alien life-forms. Any alien life-forms you breed gain a +1 lifecycle bonus.

Planetary Datalinks. You automatically discover any technology discovered by any three other factions.

Planetary Transit System. Any new bases you found begin at population level 3. One less drone at all bases of population level 3 and under.

Self-Aware Colony. Energy maintenance cost for facilities is halved at all of your bases. If use of police is allowed under the current social model, all of your bases are considered to have an extra police unit.

Singularity Inductor. Counts as a Quantum Converter at every base, and reduces the ecological effects of mineral production.

Space Elevator. Doubles energy reserves production at this base, and doubles mineral production rate at all of your bases when producing orbital facilities. Your units equipped with drop pods may now make orbital insertions anywhere on the Planet. All Aerospace Complex restrictions on orbital facilities are waived.

Supercollider. Research output at this base is doubled.
Telepathic Matrix. Drones never riot at your bases. All of your probe teams receive a +2 morale modifier.

Theory of Everything. Research output doubled at this base.

Universal Translator. Two free tech advances on completion. Any number of alien artifacts can be cashed at this base.

Virtual World. In addition to their normal effect, Network Nodes count as Hologram Theatres at each of your bases: reduce number of drones by two and increase psych output of base by 50%.

Voice of Planet. Begins the Ascent to Transcendence sequence. Any faction can now begin the Ascent to Transcendence. Any alien life-forms you breed gain a +1 lifecycle bonus.

Weather Paradigm. Increases terraforming speed by 50% for all tasks except for Remove Fungus. Your formers may build Condensors and Boreholes, and may raise/lower terrain, even if you have not yet discovered the appropriate technologies.

Xenoempathy Dome. All xenofungus squares are treated as roads, and the rate at which your formers remove and/or plant fungus is doubled. Any alien life-forms you breed gain a +1 lifecycle bonus.
**UNITS**

*Speed/Cost.* Number of moves per turn, and cost for the base unit.

*Domain.* Where the unit operates.

*Range* in turns from base (air units only).

*Cargo.* Base number of units that can be transported (multiply by reactor rating).

*Preq.* Technology required.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Names</th>
<th>Speed/Cost</th>
<th>Domain</th>
<th>Range</th>
<th>Cargo</th>
<th>Prerequisite Technology</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Infantry</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Land</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speeder</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Land</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Doctrine: Mobility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hovertank</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Land</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Nanominiaturization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foil</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Sea</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Doctrine: Flexibility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cruiser</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Sea</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Doctrine: Initiative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Needlejet</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Air</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Doctrine: Air Power</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chopper</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Air</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Mind/Machine Interface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gravship</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Air</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Graviton Theory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Missile</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Air</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Orbital Spaceflight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chassis</td>
<td>Speed</td>
<td>Modality</td>
<td>Dimensions</td>
<td>Modifiers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infantry</td>
<td>8 km/hr</td>
<td>Manual/tracked</td>
<td>n.a.</td>
<td>+25% when attacking a base</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speeder</td>
<td>102 km/hr</td>
<td>Wheeled</td>
<td>7.7x3.6x2.9m</td>
<td>+25% when attacking in open</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hovertank</td>
<td>227 km/hr</td>
<td>Aircushion</td>
<td>6.9x3x3m</td>
<td>+25% when attacking in open</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foil</td>
<td>62 km/hr</td>
<td>Airfoil</td>
<td>162x24.25x17.5m</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cruiser</td>
<td>115 km/hr</td>
<td>Naval keel</td>
<td>200x50.5x20m</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Needlejet</td>
<td>766 km/hr</td>
<td>Fixed-wing aircraft</td>
<td>18.6x12.5x4.4m</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘Chopper</td>
<td>523 km/hr</td>
<td>Rotary</td>
<td>15.5x6x4m</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gravship</td>
<td>1021 km/hr</td>
<td>Graviton booster</td>
<td>22x8x6m</td>
<td>Range unaffected by fuel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Missile</td>
<td>232.5 km/hr</td>
<td>Assisted airflow</td>
<td>15.5x5x.5m</td>
<td>Destroyed on impact</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# ARMAMENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weapon</th>
<th>Attack</th>
<th>Rating/Cost</th>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Prerequisite Technology</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hand Weapons</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Projectile</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laser</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Projectile</td>
<td>Applied Physics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Particle Impactor</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Projectile</td>
<td>Nonlinear Mathematics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gatling Laser</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Energy</td>
<td>Superconductor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Missile Launcher</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Missile</td>
<td>Synthetic Fossil Fuels</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chaos Gun</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Projectile</td>
<td>Superstring Theory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fusion Laser</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Energy</td>
<td>Organic Super Lubricant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conventional Payload</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Projectile</td>
<td>Orbital Spaceflight</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tachyon Bolt</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Energy</td>
<td>Unified Field Theory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plasma Shard</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>Missile</td>
<td>Advanced Spaceflight</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quantum Laser</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>Energy</td>
<td>Quantum Machinery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Graviton Gun</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Projectile</td>
<td>Applied Gravitonics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Singularity Laser</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>Energy</td>
<td>Controlled Singularity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Planet Buster</td>
<td>Special</td>
<td>Projectile</td>
<td>Orbital Spaceflight</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psi Attack</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>Missile</td>
<td>Centauri Psi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Projectile Weapons

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weapon</th>
<th>Ammo</th>
<th>Muzzle Vel.</th>
<th>Rate of Fire</th>
<th>Max Range</th>
<th>Target Acq.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hand Weapons</strong></td>
<td>7.62mm UN standard</td>
<td>2100 fps</td>
<td>120/min (max.)</td>
<td>550 m</td>
<td>Visual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Particle Impactor</strong></td>
<td>10mm caseless</td>
<td>2500 fps</td>
<td>1100/min</td>
<td>2700 m</td>
<td>Optical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plasma Shard</strong></td>
<td>15 mm Mass-energy shell</td>
<td>Var; max 4000 fps</td>
<td>160/min</td>
<td>16 km</td>
<td>Charged particle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chaos Gun</strong></td>
<td>9mm caseless</td>
<td>3000 fps</td>
<td>10/min</td>
<td>11 km</td>
<td>Field Differential</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Graviton Gun</strong></td>
<td>2mm 3-stage</td>
<td>9800 fps</td>
<td>2000/min</td>
<td>1.4 km</td>
<td>Nanoremote</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Missile Launcher</strong></td>
<td>Mk. 12(t) “Sabre” missile</td>
<td>Mach 2.2 6/min</td>
<td>90 km</td>
<td>IR signature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## ENERGY WEAPONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weapon</th>
<th>Active Medium</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Pulse Duration</th>
<th>Wavelength</th>
<th>Peak Power</th>
<th>Burn Rate (1’ steel)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Laser</td>
<td>Diode</td>
<td>Fiber-coupled</td>
<td>5 nsec</td>
<td>193 nm</td>
<td>.84 gw</td>
<td>.76 sec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gatling Laser</td>
<td>Neodymium-glass</td>
<td>Conductively cooled stacked array</td>
<td>2 nsec</td>
<td>107 nm</td>
<td>.96 gw</td>
<td>.52 sec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fusion Laser</td>
<td>Neodymium-YAG</td>
<td>Actively cooled stacked array</td>
<td>15 nsec</td>
<td>573 nm</td>
<td>2.4 gw</td>
<td>.14 sec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tachyon Bolt</td>
<td>Molecular hydrogen</td>
<td>Active liquid coolant</td>
<td>1 usec</td>
<td>680 nm</td>
<td>5 gw</td>
<td>.07 sec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quantum Laser</td>
<td>Temporal field distortion</td>
<td>Crystal diffusion</td>
<td>n.a.</td>
<td>.005 nm</td>
<td>Var.</td>
<td>n.a.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Singularity Laser</td>
<td>Temporal induction</td>
<td>Singularity Relative</td>
<td>.001 nm</td>
<td>n.a.</td>
<td>Relative (approach inf.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## OTHER

**Psi Attack**
- Active Medium: Patterned energy
- Type: Compelled dissociative
- Range: Line of sight
- Peak power: Inverse to distance
- Target acquisition: Psi lock

**Planet Buster**
- Designation: Mk. 714 Plasma bomb
- Active kill radius: 2000 km
- Explosive force: 296 gt TNT
- Target acquisition: Charged particle
### NONCOMBAT PACKAGES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Package</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Prerequisite Technology</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Colony Module</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terraforming Unit</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Centauri Ecology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Troop Transport</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Doctrine: Flexibility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supply Transport</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Industrial Automation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Probe Team</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Planetary Networks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alien Artifact</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>n.a.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### DEFENSES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Defense</th>
<th>Defensive Strength</th>
<th>Defends Against</th>
<th>Prerequisite Technology</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No Armor</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Projectile</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synthmetal Armor</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Projectile</td>
<td>Industrial Base</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plasma Steel Armor</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>High Energy Chemistry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Silksteel Armor</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Energy</td>
<td>Silksteel Alloys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Photon Wall</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Energy</td>
<td>Photon/Wave Mechanics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Probability Sheath</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>Probability Mechanics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defense</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Density</td>
<td>Thickness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synthmetal Armor</td>
<td>Chobham (modified)</td>
<td>2.3 kg/l</td>
<td>250mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plasma Steel Armor</td>
<td>Mass-energy composite</td>
<td>2.5 kg/l</td>
<td>520mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Silksteel Armor</td>
<td>Bonded</td>
<td>2.5 kg/l</td>
<td>520mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Photon Wall</td>
<td>Refractive field</td>
<td>n.a.</td>
<td>2m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Probability Sheath</td>
<td>Phase adjustment</td>
<td>n.a.</td>
<td>n.a.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neutronium Armor</td>
<td>Kinetic diffusion</td>
<td>4kg/l</td>
<td>755mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antimatter Plate</td>
<td>Reactive</td>
<td>-4 kg/l</td>
<td>Var.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stasis Generator</td>
<td>Temporal field distortion</td>
<td>n.a.</td>
<td>n.a.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psi Defense</td>
<td>Pattern refraction</td>
<td>n.a.</td>
<td>n.a.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Psi Defense Cost is 6.
### Reactors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reactor</th>
<th>Value/Power</th>
<th>Hit Points</th>
<th>Prerequisite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fission Plant</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fusion Reactor</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Fusion Power</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quantum Chamber</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>Quantum Power</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Singularity Engine</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>Singularity Mechanics</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reactor</th>
<th>Rating</th>
<th>Throughput</th>
<th>Effic.</th>
<th>Discharge</th>
<th>Fuel Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fission Plant</td>
<td>32,700 kw</td>
<td>29,000 kw</td>
<td>89%</td>
<td>52 r</td>
<td>Plutonium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fusion Reactor</td>
<td>68,000 kw</td>
<td>63,000 kw</td>
<td>93%</td>
<td>67 r</td>
<td>Ionized deuterium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quantum Chamber</td>
<td>148,000 kw</td>
<td>142,000 kw</td>
<td>97%</td>
<td>21 r</td>
<td>Deuterium-tritium mix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Singularity Engine</td>
<td>&gt;4 mill. kw</td>
<td>Var</td>
<td>Var</td>
<td>n.a.</td>
<td>Vizorium-5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Reactor Determines

- Unit hit points (10 x Reactor Value)
- Radius of Planet Buster destruction (1 x value square radius)
- Carrying capacity of sea units (foil 2 units x value / cruiser 4 units x value)
- Move bonus to air units with antigrav struts special ability (+2 x value)
- Higher value reactors make complex units cheaper to build
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ability</th>
<th>Abbrev</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Prereq.</th>
<th>Desc</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AAA Tracking</td>
<td>AAA</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Adv. Military Algorithms</td>
<td>Attacks air units x2 vs. air attacks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air Superiority</td>
<td>SAM</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Doctrine: Air Power</td>
<td>Attacks from ship +1 movement rate (or +Reactor*2 for Air)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amphibious Pods</td>
<td>Grav</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Doctrine: Initiative</td>
<td>Bypass base defenses Mobile Airbase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antigrav Struts</td>
<td>Blink</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Graviton Theory</td>
<td>+50% vs. fast units Invisible: Ignores ZOCs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carrier</td>
<td>Carrier</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Bio-Engineering</td>
<td>Operates underwater Sees 2 spaces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clean Reactor</td>
<td>Clean</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Adv. Subatomic Theory</td>
<td>Operates underwater Sees 2 spaces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cloaked</td>
<td>Cloaked</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Nanometallurgy</td>
<td>Clear fungus at double speed Makes air drops +50% attack vs. Psi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECM</td>
<td>ECM</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>Adv. Military Algorithms</td>
<td>Centauri Empathy Synthetic Fossil Fuels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drop Pods</td>
<td>Drop</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Mind/Machine Interface</td>
<td>Fungicide Tanks Synthetic Fossil Fuels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Empath</td>
<td>Empath</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Empath</td>
<td>Fungicide Tanks Synthetic Fossil Fuels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Empath Song</td>
<td>Empath Song</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Synthetic Fossil Fuels</td>
<td>Fungicide Tanks Synthetic Fossil Fuels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ability</td>
<td>Abbrev</td>
<td>Cost</td>
<td>Prereq.</td>
<td>Desc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heavy Artillery</td>
<td>Artillery</td>
<td>-7</td>
<td>Polymorphic Software</td>
<td>Bombs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heavy Transport</td>
<td>Heavy</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>n.a.</td>
<td>+50% transport capacity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High Morale</td>
<td>Trained</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Intellectual Integrity</td>
<td>Gains morale upgrade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypnotic Trance</td>
<td>Trance</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>Secrets of the Human Brain</td>
<td>+50% defense vs. PSI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nerve Gas Pods</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>High Energy Chemistry</td>
<td>Can +50% offense (Atrocity)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Lethal Methods</td>
<td>Police</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Intellectual Integrity</td>
<td>x2 Police powers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polymorphic Encryption</td>
<td>Secure</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Pre-Sentient Algorithms</td>
<td>x2 cost to subvert</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repair Bay</td>
<td>Repair</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Nanometallurgy</td>
<td>Repairs ground units on board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slow Unit</td>
<td>Slow</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>na.a</td>
<td>-1 moves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Super Former</td>
<td>Super</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Adv. Ecological Engineering</td>
<td>Terraform rate doubled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technology</td>
<td>Abbrev.</td>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>Notes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adv. Ecological Engineering</td>
<td>EcoEng2</td>
<td>Fusion, EnvEcon</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced Military Algorithms</td>
<td>MilAlg</td>
<td>DocFlex, OptComp</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced Spaceflight</td>
<td>Space</td>
<td>Orbital, SupLube</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced Subatomic Theory</td>
<td>Subat</td>
<td>Chemist, Poly</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applied Gravitonics</td>
<td>AGrav</td>
<td>Gravity, DigSent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applied Physics</td>
<td>Physic</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applied Relativity</td>
<td>E=Mc2</td>
<td>Super, Subat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bio-Engineering</td>
<td>BioEng</td>
<td>Gene, Neural</td>
<td>Increases intrinsic defense to gene warfare</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biogenetics</td>
<td>Biogen</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Increases intrinsic defense to gene warfare</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biomachinery</td>
<td>BioMac</td>
<td>MindMac, Viral</td>
<td>Increases intrinsic defense to gene warfare</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centauri Ecology</td>
<td>Ecology</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Increases nutrient production in fungus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technology</td>
<td>Abbrev.</td>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>Notes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centauri Empathy</td>
<td>CentEmp</td>
<td>Brain, Ecology</td>
<td>Increases minerals production in fungus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centauri Genetics</td>
<td>CentGen</td>
<td>CentMed, Viral</td>
<td>Increases energy production in fungus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centauri Meditation</td>
<td>CentMed</td>
<td>EcoEng, CentEmp</td>
<td>Increases nutrient production in fungus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centauri Psi</td>
<td>CentPsi</td>
<td>CentGen, EcoEng2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Controlled Singularity</td>
<td>ConSing</td>
<td>SingMec, AGrav</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyberethics</td>
<td>Cyber</td>
<td>PlaNets, Integ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digital Sentience</td>
<td>DigSent</td>
<td>IndRob, MindMac</td>
<td>Improves Probe Team morale</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doctrine: Air Power</td>
<td>DocAir</td>
<td>Fossil, DocFlex</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doctrine: Flexibility</td>
<td>DocFlex</td>
<td>Mobile</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doctrine: Initiative</td>
<td>DocInit</td>
<td>DocFlex, IndAuto</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doctrine: Loyalty</td>
<td>DocLoy</td>
<td>Mobile, Psych</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doctrine: Mobility</td>
<td>Mobile</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecological Engineering</td>
<td>EcoEng</td>
<td>Ecology, Gene</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technology</td>
<td>Abbrev.</td>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>Notes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Environmental Economics</td>
<td>EnvEcon</td>
<td>IndEcon, EcoEng</td>
<td>Increases commerce income</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethical Calculus</td>
<td>EthCalc</td>
<td>Psych</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eudaimonia</td>
<td>Eudaim</td>
<td>SentEco, WillPow</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frictionless Surfaces</td>
<td>Surface</td>
<td>Unified, IndRob</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fusion Power</td>
<td>Fusion</td>
<td>Algor, Super</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gene Splicing</td>
<td>Gene</td>
<td>Biogen, EthCalc</td>
<td>Increases intrinsic defense to gene warfare</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Graviton Theory</td>
<td>Gravity</td>
<td>QuanMac, MindMac</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High Energy Chemistry</td>
<td>Chemist</td>
<td>Indust, Physic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Homo Superior</td>
<td>HomoSup</td>
<td>BioMac, DocInit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Industrial Automation</td>
<td>IndAuto</td>
<td>IndEcon, PlaNets</td>
<td>Increases commerce income</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Industrial Base</td>
<td>Indust</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Industrial Economics</td>
<td>IndEcon</td>
<td>Indust</td>
<td>Increases commerce income</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Industrial Nanorobotics</td>
<td>IndRob</td>
<td>NanoMin, IndAuto</td>
<td>Increases commerce income</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information Networks</td>
<td>InfNet</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intellectual Integrity</td>
<td>Integ</td>
<td>EthCalc, DocLoy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technology</td>
<td>Abbrev.</td>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>Notes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matter Compression</td>
<td>MatComp</td>
<td>Metal, NanoMin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matter Editation</td>
<td>NanEdit</td>
<td>HAL9000, Solids</td>
<td>Increases intrinsic defense to gene warfare</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matter Transmission</td>
<td>Matter</td>
<td>NanEdit, AlphCen</td>
<td>Increases minerals production in fungus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mind/Machine Interface</td>
<td>MindMac</td>
<td>DocAir, Neural</td>
<td>Improves Probe Team morale</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monopole Magnets</td>
<td>Magnets</td>
<td>String, Alloys</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nanometallurgy</td>
<td>Metal</td>
<td>ProbMec, DocInit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nanominiaturization</td>
<td>NanoMin</td>
<td>Magnets, SupLube</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neural Grafting</td>
<td>Neural</td>
<td>Brain, IndAuto</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonlinear Mathematics</td>
<td>Chaos</td>
<td>Physic, InfNet</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optical Computers</td>
<td>OptComp</td>
<td>Physic, Poly</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orbital Spaceflight</td>
<td>Orbital</td>
<td>DocAir, Algor</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organic Superlubricant</td>
<td>SupLube</td>
<td>Fusion, Fossil</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Photon/Wave Mechanics</td>
<td>DocSec</td>
<td>E=Mc2, Alloys</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Planetary Economics</td>
<td>PlaEcon</td>
<td>EnvEcon, Integ</td>
<td>Increases commerce income</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technology</td>
<td>Abbrev.</td>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>Notes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Planetary Networks</td>
<td>PlaNets</td>
<td>InfNet</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polymorphic Software</td>
<td>Poly</td>
<td>Indust, InfNet</td>
<td>Improves Probe Team morale</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-Sentient Algorithms</td>
<td>Algor</td>
<td>MilAlg, Cyber</td>
<td>Improves Probe Team morale</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Probability Mechanics</td>
<td>ProbMec</td>
<td>DocSec, Algor</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quantum Machinery</td>
<td>QuanMac</td>
<td>Quantum, Metal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quantum Power</td>
<td>Quantum</td>
<td>Surface, PlaEcon</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retroviral Engineering</td>
<td>Viral</td>
<td>BioEng, MilAlg</td>
<td>Increases intrinsic defense to gene warfare; Allows gene warfare atrocity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secrets of Alpha Centauri</td>
<td>AlphCen</td>
<td>CentPsi, SentEco</td>
<td>“Secrets”; first discoverer gains free tech; Reveals map; Increases energy production in fungus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secrets of Creation</td>
<td>Create</td>
<td>Unified, WillPow</td>
<td>“Secrets”; first discoverer gains free tech</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secrets of the Human Brain</td>
<td>Brain</td>
<td>Psych, Biogen</td>
<td>“Secrets”; first discoverer gains free tech</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Self-Aware Machines</td>
<td>HAL9000</td>
<td>Space, DigSent</td>
<td>Improves Probe Team morale</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technology</td>
<td>Abbrev.</td>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>Notes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sentient Econometrics</td>
<td>SentEco</td>
<td>PlaEcon, DigSent</td>
<td>Increases commerce income</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Silksteel Alloys</td>
<td>Alloys</td>
<td>Subat, IndAuto</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Singularity Mechanics</td>
<td>SingMec</td>
<td>Create, HAL9000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social Psych</td>
<td>Psych</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Super Tensile Solids</td>
<td>Solids</td>
<td>MatComp, Space</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superconductor</td>
<td>Super</td>
<td>OptComp, Indust</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superstring Theory</td>
<td>String</td>
<td>Chaos, Cyber</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synthetic Fossil Fuels</td>
<td>Fossil</td>
<td>Chemist, Gene</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporal Mechanics</td>
<td>TempMec</td>
<td>Eudaim, Matter</td>
<td>Increases energy production in fungus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Will to Power</td>
<td>WillPow</td>
<td>HomoSup, CentPsi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Threshold of Transcendence</td>
<td>Thresh</td>
<td>Create, TempMec</td>
<td>Increases minerals production in fungus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transcendent Thought</td>
<td>TranT</td>
<td>Thresh, ConSing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unified Field Theory</td>
<td>Unified</td>
<td>Magnets, E=Mc2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Citizens

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Citizen</th>
<th>Prerequisite Technology</th>
<th>Made Obsolete By</th>
<th>Bonus to Economy</th>
<th>Bonus to Labs</th>
<th>Bonus to Psych</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Doctor</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Empath</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>+2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drone</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Empath</td>
<td>Centauri Meditation</td>
<td>Transcend</td>
<td>+2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>+2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engineer</td>
<td>Fusion Power</td>
<td></td>
<td>+3</td>
<td>+2</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Librarian</td>
<td>Planetary Networks</td>
<td>Thinker</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>+3</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Talent</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technician</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Engineer</td>
<td>+3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thinker</td>
<td>Mind/Machine Interface</td>
<td>Transcend</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>+3</td>
<td>+1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transcend</td>
<td>Secrets of Alpha Centauri</td>
<td></td>
<td>+2</td>
<td>+4</td>
<td>+2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Worker</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposal</td>
<td>Prerequisite Technology</td>
<td>Effect</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elect Planetary Governor</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>New Governor Appointed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Global Trade Pact</td>
<td>Planetary Economics</td>
<td>Commerce Rates Doubled</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increase Solar Shade</td>
<td>Advanced Spaceflight</td>
<td>Global Cooling; Sea Levels Drop</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Launch Solar Shade</td>
<td>Advanced Spaceflight</td>
<td>Global Cooling; Sea Levels Drop</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Melt Polar Caps</td>
<td>Adv. Ecological Engineering</td>
<td>Global Warming; Sea Levels Rise</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repeal Global Trade Pact</td>
<td>Planetary Economics</td>
<td>Commerce Rates Halved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salvage Unity Fusion Core</td>
<td>Orbital Spaceflight</td>
<td>+500 Energy Credits Every Faction</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unite Behind Me As Supreme Leader</td>
<td>Homo Superior</td>
<td>Diplomatic Victory; Game Ends</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Successful completion of certain secret projects provide free facilities at every one of your bases.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Secret Project</th>
<th>Free Facility</th>
<th>Perimeter Defense</th>
<th>Command Nexus</th>
<th>Bioenhancement Center</th>
<th>Naval Yard</th>
<th>Quantum Converter</th>
<th>Hologram Theatres</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Citizen's Defense Force</td>
<td>Command Nexus</td>
<td>Bioenhancement Center</td>
<td>Naval Yard</td>
<td>Quantum Converter</td>
<td>Hologram Theatres</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyborg Factory</td>
<td>Maritime Control Center</td>
<td>Singularity Inductor</td>
<td>Virtual World</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX 3

OPTION SCREENS
APPENDIX 3. OPTION SCREENS

RIGHT-CLICK ((errno) MENU

(errno) on a square offers a detailed menu of options.

- Move Cursor to Here. Moves the cursor to the square on which you (errno).
- Move Unit to Here. Moves the active unit to the square on which you (errno).
- Center on Active Units. Centers the map on your active unit. Can be used if you’ve lost track of where the next unit to move is.
- Activate Units Here. Activates the units on the square on which you (errno).
- End the Turn. Cancels any further actions and ends the turn.
- Info On This Square. Displays information about the square in the Data View (see p. XX).
- Help. Displays Help Menu (see p. 31).

In addition, the (errno) menu may display additional options depending on the contents of the square.

If there is a base in the square, the options include:

- Zoom To Base. Opens the Base Window (see p. XX).
- Change Production. Opens the Production Readout for the base (see p. 78).
- Hurry <current project>. Where <current project> is the name of the project currently underway. See Build Orders, p. 67.
- Set To Explore.
- Set to Discover.
- Set to Build.
• Set to Conquer.

(These four are options for the base governor. See Governor, p. XX.)

If the active unit is in the square, the options include:
• Action. Opens the Action Menu (see p. 46).

If the active unit is a terraformer and is in the square, the actions include:
• Terraform. Opens the Terraform Menu (see p. 46).

GAME RULES
• Higher Goal: Allow Victory by Transcendence
• Total War: Allow Victory by Conquest
• Peace in Our Time: Allow Diplomatic Victory
• Mine, All Mine: Allow Economic Victory
• One For All: Allow Cooperative Victory. Your pact brothers can help you achieve victory conditions, and share the victory with you.

• Do Or Die: Don’t Restart Eliminated Players. Normally, if a faction is eliminated (particularly early in the game), the leadership escapes and founds a new base elsewhere on Planet. Under this option, when a faction’s gone, it’s gone for good.

• Look First: Flexible Starting Locations. When you make planetfall, your colony pod waits for you to order it to build your first base, allowing you to reposition the base if you wish.

• Tech Stagnation: Slower Rate of Research Discoveries. Technological progress is slowed down across the board.

• Spoils of War: Steal Tech When Conquer Base. When you conquer a base of a faction that possesses technology that your faction does not, you may select one technology to steal.
• Blind Research: Cannot Set Precise Research Goals. You select broad categories for your researchers to concentrate their efforts, based on the priorities you set between Explore, Discover, Build and Conquer.

• Intense Rivalry: Opponents More Aggressive. The other factions are much more willing to fight (and more likely to gang up on you).

• No Unity Survey: World Map Not Visible. You know nothing of the world other than squares you have actually explored and their immediate vicinity.

• No Unity Scattering: Supply Pods Only at Landing Sites. There are some Unity pods near your first base, but nowhere else.

• Bell Curve: No Random Events. Most random events are disabled.

• Time Warp: Accelerated Start. You start the game some years after planetfall, with several bases, technologies and enhancements.

• Iron Man: Save/Restore Restricted To Exit. Autosaves are disabled except when you actually leave the game—no going back to undo mistakes.

• Randomize Faction Leader Personalities. Leaders behave in unpredictable ways.

• Randomize Faction Leader Social Agendas. Faction leaders do not adhere to preset social agendas.

GAME PREFERENCES

PREFERENCES

• Tutorial Messages. The game displays “pop-up” hints and suggestions.

• Design Units Automatically. The game gives you pre-designed units at each appropriate technological advance.

• Auto-Prune Obsolete Units. Automatically deletes obsolete, out-of-production units from your production readout. It is recommended that you
leave this option on, as your production readout has a finite number of slots for units, and these can fill up very rapidly with obsolete units.

- **Mouse at Edge Scrolls View.** Moving your mouse to the edge of the screen (not the edge of the map) causes the map to scroll in that direction.

- **Autosave Each Turn.** The game creates a new autosave file at the end of each turn. These files are kept in the AUTO subdirectory of your SAVES directory. To load an autosave, select the turn you wish to return to. Autosaves are kept for turns 1-10, 20 and 30 prior to the current turn.

- **Pause at End of Turn.** When your turn is completed, the game pauses until you click on the TURN COMPLETE button.

- **Move Enemy/Neutral Pieces Quickly.** Visible units from enemy or neutral factions move quickly, without full animation.

- **Move Allied Pieces Quickly.** Visible units from allied factions move quickly, without full animation.

**WARNING PREFERENCES**

This menu is a list of actions or events that can occur at your bases. You may select whether you wish the game to stop when one of these actions or events occurs. If you choose to be warned about a given situation, you are shown a window asking if you wish to zoom to the base where the situation occurred, or ignore it and proceed with your turn. Even if you have these pop-up warnings off, you still get an automated message about the event in your message window (see Data MFD, p. 26).

- **Stop for New Facilities Built**
- **Stop for Non-Combat Units Built**
- **Stop for Combat Units Built**
- **Stop for Prototypes Completed**
• Stop for Items Built by Governors/Queues
• Stop for Drone Riots
• Stop for End of Drone Riots
• Stop for Golden Age
• Stop for End of Golden Age
• Stop for Nutrient Low
• Stop for Build Orders Out of Date
• Stop for Population Limit Reached
• Stop for Delay in Transcendence
• Stop for Starvation
• Stop for Mineral Shortages
• Stop for Energy Shortages
• Stop for Random Events

ADVANCED PREFERENCES

• Radio Buttons Select with Single Click. A single © both selects and confirms a button function.

• Click on Unit Always Cancels Orders. © on a unit to cancel any current orders.

• Confirm Odds Before Attacking. The game displays combat odds whenever you make an attack move, then waits for you to confirm the attack. This allows you to precisely gauge your odds of winning a combat.

• Pause Whenever Our Forces are Attacked. Play stops after you are attacked, so you may analyze combat results.

• Fast Battle Resolution. Combat animations are speeded up, so the game moves faster.
- Move Units With Orders Quickly. Units carrying out preset movement orders are not animated when moving into each square on their route. They quickly “jump” from square to square.

- Move All Units Quickly. Units are not shown moving between squares—they just appear in their next position.

- Don’t Center On Units With Orders. The game does not recenter on units carrying out multi-turn orders.

- Zoom-To-Base Doesn’t Recenter Map. Allows you to open a base screen when an event occurs, without centering your map on that base.

- Detailed Main Menus. Toggles between long, detailed menus, and shorter ones with fewer options.

- Detailed Right-Click Menus. Toggles between a long, detailed menu, and a shorter one with fewer options.

- Right-Click Pops Up Menus. Allows you to toggle the menu on or off. When this option is off, if you , the cursor moves to the indicated location. You can still get to the menu by using Shift.

AUTOMATION PREFERENCES

- Air Units Can Return Home When Reach Limit of Fuel Range. Air units who exhaust their outbound movement automatically return to the nearest base on the next turn. This keeps you from forgetting about an air unit with low fuel.

- Automated Formers Can Plant Forests. Formers on “Auto” (see Terraform Menu, p. 46) may plant forests.

- Automated Formers Can Raise/Lower Terrain. Formers on “Auto” (see Terraform Menu, p. 46) may raise or lower terrain.

- Automated Formers Can Build Condensers, Boreholes, etc. Formers on “Auto” (see Terraform Menu, p. 46) may build these enhancements.
• Automated Formers Can Remove Fungus. Formers on “Auto” (see Terraform Menu, p. 46) may remove fungus.

• Automated Formers Can Build Sensors. Formers on “Auto” (see Terraform Menu, p. 46) may build sensors.

• Cancel Movement Orders When Spot Units w/ Pact. Any movement orders are canceled when your unit sees a unit from a faction that is a pact brother.

• Cancel Movement Orders When Spot Units w/ Treaty. Any movement orders are canceled when your unit sees a unit from a faction with which you have a treaty.

• Cancel Movement Orders When Spot Units w/ Truce. Any movement orders are canceled when your unit sees a unit from a faction with which you have a truce.

• Cancel Movement Orders When Spot Units w/ Vendetta. Any movement orders are canceled when your unit sees a unit from a faction against which you have a vendetta.

• Do Not Cancel for Units of Different Class (land/sea/air). The above cancel options do not apply if your unit is a land unit and the other is a sea or air unit, and so forth.

• Wake Passengers When Transport Reaches Land. If a transport moves adjacent to a land square, the units inside automatically activate for orders.

• Always Investigate Monolith. A combat unit investigates a monolith any time it visits a monolith square, without requesting your permission.

**AUDIO/VISUAL PREFERENCES**

• Background Music. Toggles background music.

• Sound Effects. Toggles sound effects.

• Voiceovers (Tech and Facility). Toggles the voiceover quotes that occur when you discover a new technology or build a facility for the first time.
• Voiceovers Stop When Popup Closed. Voiceovers fade out quickly when you exit the window announcing the project's completion.

• Secret Project Movies. Toggles the movies that play when Secret Projects are completed.

• Interludes. Toggles the story interludes.

• Map Animations. Toggles map animation.

• Sliding Window. Sliding menu windows don’t slide, they just pop.

• Sliding Scrollbars. Sliding scrollbars don’t slide, they just pop.

• Whole Unit Blinks. The whole active unit blinks, instead of just its status bar.

MAP DISPLAY PREFERENCES

• Show Fog of War. Explored squares outside of your current sensor range are dimmer than squares inside that range.

• Show Map Grid. The map grid is visible.

• Show Base Grid. A line is visible between your bases’ production radii and unexploited terrain.

• Show Base Names. Base names are displayed below the base icons.

• Show Production with Base Names. Base names and current production orders are displayed below base icons.

• Show Flattened Terrain. The map is not contoured to show elevation.
APPENDIX 4

ADVANCED CUSTOMIZATION
ADVANCED CUSTOMIZATION

Alpha Centauri includes a full range of editor functions that allow you to create your own maps or scenarios, alter the basic rules of the game, or just plain cheat yourself silly (in single-player games only, of course). The designers encourage players to become designers themselves, and see what new and unexpected challenges their imaginations can create.

SCENARIO AND EDIT MAP MENU OPTIONS

The Scenario and Edit Map menus provide a number of powerful editing tools. They are not considered part of the game itself, and using them cancels the score of any game you are playing, but are provided for your enjoyment. Using these tools, you can create your own scenarios, with custom maps, rules, objectives and situations. Feel free to play around and create new scenarios for your own use and that of your friends. We don’t have the space to document all the features in the scenario and map editors, but here’s a few basics to get you started:

• Activate Scenario Editor Ctrl[K]. When you want to edit a particular scenario or map, you must first activate the scenario editor from the Scenario menu. Once you’ve activated the scenario editor, any game underway no longer keeps track of the score.

• Edit Map options. The map editor allows you to build or tweak any map using the options provided. Most are self-explanatory. When placing features, whether terrain or enhancements, remember that first you toggle a particular feature, and then Shift to place that feature, and Shift to remove that feature. All Edit Map features are displayed as icon toggles in the central information window when the scenario editor is active.

• Save early, save often. The map and scenario editors can cause some program malfunctions because of the nature of these alterations. We suggest you save your work early and often. Have fun!
EDITING TEXT FILES

Many basic rules of *Alpha Centauri* are set out in plain text files, which you can modify with any text editor. (These files also let you customize the messages and quotes in the game, to humorous or dramatic effect.) You can, for example, eliminate the extra cost for prototypes (or hike it to 200%), or add an attack bonus for non-artillery units attacking the enemy from a higher elevation, or completely re-arrange the starting abilities of a faction.

Important rules files are *alpha.txt*, and the files for the individual factions; *believe.txt*, *gaians.txt*, *hive.txt*, *morgan.txt*, *peace.text*, *spartans.txt* and *univ.txt*. All the diplomatic language in the game can be found in *script.txt*. These can all be found in the game’s root directly on your hard drive.

There’s not room to describe all the available options here, but the designers have done their best to make it reasonably easy to modify these files, even for non-programmers. Many sections have an entry that describes the function of that section.

If you feel the urge to tinker, have fun. However, a few rules of caution are in order before you start tweaking the game rules:

- **Plain text only.** Never, ever, *ever* save in any other format but plain text. Otherwise formatting characters get in which screw things up. You might not even want to open the file in anything other than a plain text editor, to minimize the chances of unwanted formatting.

- **The changes you make do change the game.** Don’t be surprised if a relatively minor alteration turns out to have a major effect on game balance.

- **YOU TWEAK AT YOUR OWN RISK.** If you somehow manage to break the game through file tweaking, you should uninstall the game and delete any remnant files. Our Tech Support department cannot help you if you have deliberately tweaked the game.

- **Save everything.** Before you start messing with the rules files, put the original files, plus any saved games you want to keep (look for files with the .sav suffix) in a separate directory.
• **Total meltdown.** If you mess around with these files severely enough, the possibility exists that you might break the whole system—computers are surprising that way. So once again, if you start playing around with rules files, it’s AT YOUR OWN RISK. FIRAXIS Games and Electronic Arts™ will not be held responsible.

**Note.** You can create custom text files for use with custom scenarios. Create a directory where you will store your scenario, then place the desired custom text files in the same directory. When you launch the game and load a scenario, the game looks for the text files from the same directory as the scenario first. If it doesn’t find them, it looks in the root game directory as normal.

**MAP EDITOR COMMANDS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Keyboard Shortcuts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Save Map</td>
<td>Ctrl F5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load Map</td>
<td>Ctrl Shift F5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place Elevations</td>
<td>Ctrl 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place Rocky Squares</td>
<td>Ctrl 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place River Sources</td>
<td>Ctrl 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place Special Resources</td>
<td>Ctrl 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place Unity Pods</td>
<td>Ctrl 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place Terrain Enhancements</td>
<td>Ctrl 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place At Cursor</td>
<td>Ctrl (Shift) paints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remove At Cursor</td>
<td>Ctrl (Shift) paints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paint &amp; Editor Only Mode</td>
<td>(Scroll Lock)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change Brush Size</td>
<td>Ctrl 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set Climate And World Parameters</td>
<td>Ctrl 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Slow) Generate Random Map</td>
<td>Ctrl 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Fast) Generate Random Map</td>
<td>Ctrl 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toggle “Editor Only” Mode</td>
<td>Ctrl Shift F10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SCENARIO EDITOR COMMANDS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Keyboard Shortcuts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Activate Scenario Editor</td>
<td>Ctrl K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Omniscient View</td>
<td>Shift Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create Unit...</td>
<td>Ctrl Shift F1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit Unit...</td>
<td>Ctrl Shift F2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technological Breakthrough</td>
<td>Shift F3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit Technology...</td>
<td>Ctrl F2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switch Sides/Set View...</td>
<td>Shift F3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set Difficulty Level...</td>
<td>Ctrl Shift F3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set Energy Reserves...</td>
<td>Shift F4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set Mission Year...</td>
<td>Shift F5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eliminate Faction...</td>
<td>Shift F6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reload Faction...</td>
<td>Ctrl Shift F6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eliminate Units</td>
<td>Ctrl F6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View Replay...</td>
<td>Shift F7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View Movies...</td>
<td>Shift F8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reset Technology</td>
<td>Ctrl F8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reset All Factions</td>
<td>Ctrl Shift F8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit Faction Diplomacy</td>
<td>Shift F9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit Faction Personality</td>
<td>Ctrl F9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit Faction Strategy</td>
<td>Ctrl Shift F9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit Custom Rules</td>
<td>Shift F10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit Scenario Rules</td>
<td>Shift F11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit Scenario Parameters</td>
<td>Shift F12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit Scenario Victory</td>
<td>Ctrl Shift F12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Undo</td>
<td>Alt Bksp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load Scenario</td>
<td>Ctrl Shift F7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Save Scenario</td>
<td>Ctrl F7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX 5

A NEW SUN
A NEW SUN

As the nearest stellar neighbor of the Sol system, there is a great deal more data that can be collected about Alpha Centauri than can be amassed about more remote stars. So far everything we know about Alpha Centauri suggests that an earthlike world, capable of (at least potentially) supporting human life, is entirely possible — and perhaps likely.

THE CENTAUR

The earliest astronomers identified groups of stars that seemed to fit together, into constellations (“stars together”). The most familiar of these include the twelve constellations of the zodiac — the constellations through which the Sun “passes” as the Earth completes its yearly revolution.

About A.D. 135, the Greek astronomer Ptolemy, working in Alexandria, Egypt, catalogued the twelve zodiacal constellations, plus 36 more. One, just barely visible on the southern horizon, he listed as Centaurus, the Centaur. Alexandria, at 31.1° N, is further south than all of Europe and most of North America (everything but parts of Texas and Florida, and most of Mexico) — no one north of that point can see the Centaur. In fact, the two brightest stars of this constellation are too far south for even Ptolemy to have seen in Alexandria.

Since none of the well-connected astronomers of ancient times even knew about these two stars, they never got the individual names that now identify other bright stars (such as Polaris and Sirius). By the mid-1700s, 40 more constellations had been added to the 48 that Ptolemy had originally catalogued, and these 88 spanned the heavens. In 1603, Johann Bayer published a catalogue, not just of constellations, but of all the brightest stars. The most visible star in each constellation became “Alpha,” the second-brightest “Beta,” and so forth. The brightest star in the Centaur became Alpha Centauri. Alpha Centauri is at the Centaur’s hip.
Brief Mythological Sidetrip. Other lands also have myths of half-horse, half-human creatures and races, but Centaurs are best known for their role in Greek mythology. They have the body and legs of a horse, with the torso, arms and head of a human. In some myths they are lustful and aggressive; in other tales they are wise and reserved.

BRIGHT STARS
It's obvious to anyone who sees it that Alpha Centauri is bright, but how bright is it? About 130 B.C., Hipparchus divided the visible stars into “magnitudes.” He recorded six levels of magnitude, later more precise measurements have determined that each magnitude is about 2.5 times brighter than the next magnitude. He listed 18 first-magnitude stars; four more were added to his list by later astronomers, stars that were too far south for him to see. These four stars are Alpha and Beta Crucis (in the Southern Cross) and Alpha and Beta Centauri.

In fact, Alpha Centauri is the third-brightest star in the sky, behind Sirius (magnitude -1.42) and Canopus (-0.72), with a magnitude of -0.27. It’s over three times brighter than the average first-magnitude star. (For the record, it’s the tenth-brightest object in the sky, behind the Sun, the Moon, Venus, Mars, Jupiter, Sirius, Mercury, Canopus and Saturn.)

But why is it so bright? The answer seems obvious today, but let’s briefly follow the trail of discovery that astronomers followed.

PROPER MOTION
In the early 1700s, Edmund Halley discovered that a few stars (Sirius, Procyon and Arcturus) actually shifted position in the sky. In particular, bright stars seemed to be more likely to move. That made it likelier that bright stars are bright because they are closer to us. (It had already been decided that stars, unlike planets, were too far away to reflect the light of the Sun, because they didn’t seem any larger when viewed under magnification. The resulting theory was that stars generated their own light.)
The motion that Halley discovered is called *proper motion*, because it is motion of the star itself, rather than movement of the Earth. Halley couldn’t see Alpha Centauri, but other astronomers soon discovered that it, too, has proper motion. In fact, its motion is greater than that of any other bright star. On the other hand, it’s not surprising this motion wasn’t detected by earlier astronomers — it takes more than 500 years for Alpha Centauri to transit an arc of space as wide as the moon.

However, the proper motions of several very dim stars — including 61 Cygni (fifth magnitude) and Barnard’s Star (ninth magnitude) — are greater even than that of Alpha Centauri. Barnard’s Star is almost three times as fast as Alpha Centauri. So which is the better predictor of closeness, brightness or proper motion? (Note that a star coming directly at us, or moving directly away from us, would have no detectable proper motion, no matter how close it is.)

**DOUBLE STARS**

*Double stars* are pairs of stars that are apparently so close that it’s hard to distinguish them individually. Alpha Centauri turns out to be a double star. It wasn’t originally thought that double stars were actually close to each other, just that they were on the same line as seen from the Earth. However, when astronomers started listing double stars, there turned out to be far too many for random distribution of this sort. It seemed likely that many of the double stars were actually part of the same system. Double stars that are bound together in one system are called *binary* stars. Alpha Centauri is a binary, containing Alpha Centauri A and Alpha Centauri B.

Observation of a binary system gives us two more indicators to its distance from our own solar system. The farther apart the two stars appear to be from each other, the closer the system is likely to be to us. This likelihood is drawn from the assumption that all binary stars are actually the same distance apart from each other, which is obviously not true. However, it can serve as an indicator, especially when combined with other data.
The second clue is that the more quickly they revolve around each other, the closer they are likely to be to each other. (Mercury, very close to the Sun, revolves around the Sun in 88 days – Earth days, that is. Jupiter takes almost 12 Earth years for the same revolution.)

Alpha Centauri A and B have one of the widest apparent separations and one of the quickest revolutions (80 years) of all binary stars. The evidence mounted that Alpha Centauri is very close to us.

**PARALLAX**

As telescopes got better and better, it eventually became possible to measure the parallax of closer stars. Parallax is a measure of how much an object appears to shift, when the observer shifts position. In the case of stars, the only way to measure perceivable parallax is to observe a star at two times in the year, six months apart from each other, so that the Earth (and the observer) have shifted from one side of the solar system to the other. In the 1830s Thomas Henderson was able to measure Alpha Centauri's parallax. He determined that Alpha Centauri is 4.4 light-years away from us. (Remember that Alpha Centauri is a binary, so sometimes Alpha Centauri A is closer to us, and sometimes Alpha Centauri B is closer.) No star has since been found to be closer.

**PROXIMA CENTAURI**

Okay, there is one star closer. Sometimes. In 1913, Robert Innes discovered an eleventh-magnitude star very close to the Alpha Centauri system, with high parallax. It is 0.15 light-years (a trillion miles, or more than 13,000 AU*s*) from Alpha Centauri A and B, but turns out to be part of the Alpha Centauri system, nonetheless. Its orbit around the other two stars takes hundreds of thousands of years; for now, it is closer to us than either Alpha Centauri A or B, by the same 0.15 light-years. Officially, it is Alpha Centauri C. Unofficially, it is Proxima Centauri. We’ll keep calling Alpha Centauri a binary system, because Alpha Centauri C is too far away, and too small, to materially affect the two larger stars.

* An AU is an astronomical unit, the distance from the Earth to the Sun.
**LUMINOSITY**

Once we determine the actual distance of a star, several other bits of data fall into place. We can determine how bright the star actually is — its *absolute magnitude* — by comparing its apparent magnitude from Earth and its distance. It turns out that neither Alpha Centauri A nor Alpha Centauri B is among the stars with the greatest absolute magnitude; their apparent brightness relies a great deal on how close they are to us. For the sake of any colonization efforts, that turns out to be a good thing — both stars have habitable zones (which isn’t to say that either star has a planet orbiting it, much less one actually within the habitable zone).

**MASS**

The fact that Alpha Centauri is a binary system gives us a great deal more information about its stars. We know how far away it is, so we can calculate the average distance between Alpha Centauri A and Alpha Centauri B. If we know this average distance and their *period of revolution* (how long it takes them to complete one revolution around each other), we can determine the total mass of the system. If we can measure how much each moves relative to more distant stars, we can calculate which one is more massive, and by how much. And if we know all of this, we can calculate whether their orbit around each other is closer to a circle or to a long, narrow oval.

**SOLAR SYSTEM COMPARISONS**

So how similar are Alpha Centauri A and Alpha Centauri B to the Sun?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Sun</th>
<th>Alpha Centauri A</th>
<th>Alpha Centauri B</th>
<th>Alpha Centauri C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mass</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.08</td>
<td>0.91</td>
<td>0.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luminosity</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.45</td>
<td>0.45</td>
<td>0.00006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spectral Class</td>
<td>G2</td>
<td>G2</td>
<td>K5</td>
<td>M5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surface Temp</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>0.73</td>
<td>0.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diameter</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.09</td>
<td>0.70</td>
<td>0.25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
As you can see, the Sun and Alpha Centauri A are very similar to each other. They are both G2 stars, which means that Alpha Centauri A has the same yellow color as the Sun. Alpha Centauri A is larger and brighter, but not by a great deal. Anyone, or anything, comfortable with the Sun would probably be comfortable with Alpha Centauri A.

Alpha Centauri B is smaller and dimmer than the Sun. It is orange, rather than yellow. Alpha Centauri C is a great deal smaller and dimmer than any of the other three, and is red.

HABITABLE PLANETS

There are limits on the radius at which a planet habitable to mankind might orbit a star. The brighter and hotter the star, the farther out a planet must be to be habitable; the dimmer the star, the closer a planet must be. Alpha Centauri C can have no habitable planets — any planet close enough for life-sustaining sunshine would be quickly ripped apart by gravitational forces. Both Alpha Centauri A and B could have habitable planets, if they weren’t part of a binary system.

But what effect might the two stars have on each other’s habitable planets? As it happens, very little. If a planet were within either star’s habitable zone, it would never come close enough to the other star to be materially affected by it — its orbit would be stable. Take a look at the illustration of our solar system, with the Alpha Centauri binary system superimposed on it. Mentally replace the Sun with Alpha Centauri A. Alpha Centauri A’s habitable zone does not reach much beyond the orbit of Mars, and any planet that close to Alpha Centauri A is always too far from Alpha Centauri B to be affected by it.

Now mentally replace the Sun with Alpha Centauri B. Since Alpha Centauri B is cooler than the Sun or Alpha Centauri A, its habitable zone is even closer to Alpha Centauri B. Again, Alpha Centauri A would never come close enough to perturb a habitable planet around Alpha Centauri B.

The same can not be said for planets at greater distances from either of the binaries. Neither star can have a planet with the orbital radius of Jupiter,
Saturn, Uranus or Neptune. In fact, once beyond the radius of Mars, the only stable orbits are those that circle *both* stars.

Even if neither star would perturb each other’s habitable planets, they would still be clearly visible. From a planet circling Alpha Centauri A, Alpha Centauri B would be a tiny, dazzlingly-bright yellow-orange light in the sky. It will be a tiny dot, but not quite a point, and it would be far brighter than any full moon — easily bright enough to read by. It would light up the night sides of any moons in the sky, as Earth does to the Moon’s dark side if you look carefully when the Moon is a crescent. Depending on the geometry at any given time, soon after sunset or before sunrise you might even see “double crescent” moons! Alpha Centauri C would be just barely visible at darkest night as a red naked-eye star from either Alpha Centauri A or B.

**PLANETOGRAPHY**

Both Alpha Centauri A and B can clearly support habitable planets. We are not currently aware of any planets orbiting either or both of these stars (although recent investigations using the Hubble telescope suggest that a giant planet or a brown dwarf — a very small star — is orbiting Alpha Centauri C). However, let’s assume a habitable planet orbits Alpha Centauri A. It should be named Chiron, after the wisest of all the mythological Centaurs, and the tutor of Achilles, Aesculapius and Hercules. However, anyone who lived there for long might simply call it Planet.

**EARTH COMPARISONS**

Planet is quite a bit more massive than Earth, with a larger radius. While the larger radius reduces the effects of gravity a certain amount, Planet’s greater mass still creates a 30% greater gravitational pull — objects are 30% heavier on Planet than on Earth. Planet is a bit farther from Alpha Centauri A than Earth is from the Sun, but Alpha Centauri A is brighter than the Sun, and these differences offset, so that Alpha Centauri A is almost exactly as bright from Planet as the Sun is from Earth.
Planet’s days are only about 18 hours, so sleep cycles must be correspondingly reduced. Its years are slightly longer than Earth’s years, but not enough to make a noticeable difference. The greater difference is Planet’s lack of seasons. With only a slight axial tilt, any seasonal differences are minimal.

Neither of Planet’s moons exert as much tidal pull as Earth’s moon, but when they combine, tides will run slightly higher than on Earth.

Once every 80 years, as Alpha Centauri B reaches perihelion (its closest approach to Alpha Centauri A), it generates enough heat to increase Planet’s average temperature by 0.3°C. That doesn’t seem like much, but Planet’s climactic system might easily amplify this to uncomfortable levels. In fact, any life native to Planet may have evolved cyclic responses to this event.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Planetary constants</th>
<th>Earth</th>
<th>Planet (Chiron)</th>
<th>P/E Ratio</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mass (kg)</td>
<td>5.98 x 10^24</td>
<td>1.10 x 10^25</td>
<td>1.84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equat. radius (km)</td>
<td>6380</td>
<td>7540</td>
<td>1.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dist. from star (km)</td>
<td>1.50 x 10^8</td>
<td>1.60 x 10^8</td>
<td>1.07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Axial tilt (degrees)</td>
<td>23.45</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>0.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surface area (km^2)</td>
<td>5.10 x 10^8</td>
<td>7.18 x 10^8</td>
<td>1.41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard gravity (m/s^2)</td>
<td>9.81</td>
<td>12.85</td>
<td>1.31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escape velocity (m/s)</td>
<td>11,184</td>
<td>13,947</td>
<td>1.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Density (kg/m^3)</td>
<td>5519</td>
<td>6150</td>
<td>1.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Size of sun (degrees)</td>
<td>0.27</td>
<td>0.27</td>
<td>1.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year (Earth days)</td>
<td>365</td>
<td>389</td>
<td>1.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year (Planet days)</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>532</td>
<td>1.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Day (hours)</td>
<td>24.00</td>
<td>17.53</td>
<td>0.73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mountain height (m)</td>
<td>10,626</td>
<td>8112</td>
<td>0.76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horizon distance (m)</td>
<td>5051</td>
<td>5493</td>
<td>1.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ocean tide (sun) (m)</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td>0.94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ocean tide (Nessus) (m)</td>
<td>0.27</td>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>0.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ocean tide (Pholus) (m)</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ocean tide (all) (m)</td>
<td>0.39</td>
<td>0.41</td>
<td>1.05</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Atmospheric Composition

The atmosphere consists of 90.9% Nitrogen, 8.5% Oxygen and 0.01% Carbon Dioxide. The low oxygen content results in fewer forest fires, a higher proportion of anoxic (oxygen-free) environments — encouraging a large anaerobic ecosystem reducing nitrates to break down organic matter — and a plant ecosystem dominated by the need to conserve carbon.
METEOROLOGY AND CLIMATOLOGY

Planet’s larger size and gravity result in a significantly higher sea level pressure than Earth’s: 1.74 atmospheres (that is, 74% greater air pressure at sea level than on Earth). This brings the partial pressure of Oxygen (15k Pascals) up to acceptable levels, but the high overall pressure combined with such a large quantity of Nitrogen produces deadly Nitrogen narcosis in unprotected humans. Human colonists would have to wear pressure helmets, at the very least.

The temperature bands running along the surface of Planet are the most obvious climactic pattern. As on Earth, solar energy warms the equatorial areas, and the weather cools as you migrate towards the poles. Thus, equatorial regions produce more energy, while the poles tend to have more mineral resources.

The rainfall patterns of Planet depend on the wind currents, which always blow from west to east. Since the wind carries moisture with it from the oceans, rain tends to fall on the west side of mountain ranges. You can see this trend when looking at a big continent — green predominates on the western coast, indicating a great deal of rainy or moist terrain, while the east coast remains dry and barren. Rainfall determines the amount of nutrients that may be collected, so often the west coast of a continent proves a better source of nutrients than the east coast. On flat continents or small islands, no elevations exist to trap the rainfall, and so moisture tends to be more evenly distributed. Also, river valleys usually have a reasonable amount of rain, so a river running through a dry area can be a good base location.

The warm tropical seas of Planet are breeding grounds for hurricanes, which are also encouraged by the high gravity and rapid rotation. The dense nitrogen atmosphere only partly offsets this. The equatorial cloud belts, however, help to regulate the climate by reflecting sunlight.
**OCEANOGRAPHY**

At over 20% higher insolation than Earth, Planet has very small polar ice caps. The effect of this on the oceanic circulation is profound. Instead of cold oxygen-rich polar water sinking at the poles and being carried in a current along the ocean floor to the equator (as on Earth today), the circulation is driven in reverse, with warm saline oxygen-poor water sinking at the equator and flowing to the poles. As a result, the bottom waters have little oxygen.

**SOIL COMPOSITION**

Compared to Earth, silicates are much less common in the soils of Planet. As in the tropics on Earth, warm water leaches the silica from clays, leaving a poor alumina-rich soil. (This does not prevent rain forests from growing, but will inhibit agriculture.) The arctic regions have a higher proportion of acidic soils with a high proportion of organic matter (podzols) which is equally hard to farm. The temperate soil zone, which on Earth is favoured with rich aluminosilicate clays, is much narrower on Planet, and the soils are more likely to be sandy or lime-rich. Bogs are also common.

**ECOLOGY**

Although basically similar to Earth life, in that it is based on carbon compounds in water, the organisms of Planet have evolved a biochemistry very different from Earth. The scarcity of carbon in the environment, and of dioxygen in the soil, has forced plants to try to make do without O2 (oxygen), and to economize on the use of carbon in structural parts and as an energy storage material. They do this by using a biochemical reaction unknown on Earth. Planet’s plants seem to have a special enzyme to encourage this reaction, possibly with the aid of sunlight. They use the nitrate obtained this way to store energy as organic nitro-compounds, to reduce carbonates to carbon, and to carry out respiration in anoxic environments.
The prevalence of anoxic (oxygen-free) environments rich in organic material, combined with the presence everywhere on Planet of nitrated compounds, has led to an astonishing variety of underground organisms which live in the absence of oxygen (though they can use oxygen if it is present) and “breathe” nitrate. This ecosystem apparently has symbiotic relations with the plants and with Planet’s animal life. Also note that the prevalence of nitrate in the environment has serious repercussions.

Nitrous oxide is present in only small amounts as it combines with ozone in the stratosphere to break down into N2 and O2 (which prevents the build-up of an ozone layer).

When plant material is buried, nitro-hydrocarbons have all they need to “burn,” so they do so slowly underground, leaving nothing behind until all the reducing material (hydrocarbon) or all the oxidizing material (nitrate) has gone. Nitrate nearly always runs out first, leaving a residue of carbon compounds. Provided this does not come into contact with oxygen, it fossilizes to produce ordinary fossil fuels. Since Planet has been hot and hypoxic for a long time, it should be expected to have all the oil, shale and coal anyone could want, depending on the efficiency of the ecosystem.

Regardless of any attempt to wipe out the underground nitrate respirers, all efforts to return carbon to the biosphere would encourage Planet life to proliferate. Conversely, the huge quantities of nitrate in the soil would be heaven to human farmers.

However, water would have to be treated in order to remove the nitrates so that it is safe to drink; otherwise humans would suffer from methemoglobinemia, or “blue baby syndrome,” where the red blood cells are poisoned so they can’t take up oxygen. The best way to treat this water is to pass ozone through it to destroy the nitrate.
XENOFUNGUS

Xenofungus is a hard, crimson mass of tubular shoots ranging in size from about a foot across to microscopic. It grows in huge, heaped tangles capable of covering thousands of square kilometers of land, with a depth ranging anywhere from 2 to over 25 meters. Anything trying to move through a fungal area must either have (a) the raw tonnage required to break through the mass, (b) the ability to move over its top without shredding itself or becoming bogged down in the mass’s many cavities, or (c) the firepower simply to blast its way through.

Xenofungus also grows in the oceans. Sea fungus is a bit more diffuse than the land stuff (tending to grow much taller, but not nearly as dense), but is otherwise basically identical.

Most xenofungus blooms are thousands of years old, and geographically stable. On the rare occasions when they do appear, however, they literally appear almost overnight, growing at a rate of up to a meter an hour, sprouting spontaneously over an area that can encompass hundreds of square kilometers.

Chemical analysis of the fungus indicates that it’s a rich source of trace elements and rare minerals with a high potential value in energy, nutrient and mineral production. The only barrier to the full exploitation of the fungus as a natural resource is the evolution of technologies to extract its benefits economically.

The fungus seems to exist in a semi-symbiotic relationship with the mind worms (see Mind Worms, p. XX). Boils are often reported to originate from fungus blooms, particularly when the blooms are somehow damaged. The worms seems to provide the fungus with a natural defense.

One of the more mysterious and controversial aspects of the fungus is its “song.” Certain individuals in the immediate proximity of fungal blooms (anywhere from 5 to 200 kilometers, depending on the individual and the size of the bloom) claim to hear a sort of hum or ululation from the fungus. This “music” is not audible to most, and it cannot be recorded. If it exists at all, it
may be a resonance created from the same “psychoactive” field that the mind worms employ. Some (particularly among the Gaian faction, which believes implicitly in the “Song of Planet” and has accorded it a mystical significance) claim the song is ethereally beautiful. Others have alleged that prolonged exposure can drive the human brain to distraction, or even madness.

MIND WORMS

The dominant land species on Chiron is the mind worm. From a distance, an individual worm specimen, with an average length of 10cm, hardly seems a threat. Get closer, however, and a human may experience the power of this species. Visions of horrible tortures and frightful deaths assail the mind, straight out of the victim’s worst nightmares. This effect multiplies with the number of worms present, each individual adding its own voice to the attack. With sufficient numbers, the victim goes numb with terror, causing spasms, paralysis, and even death as the autonomous nervous system shuts down. This attack is only a precursor to the worm’s main goal: to implant freshly hatched larvae inside the host’s brain. One gravid worm, if sufficiently agitated, can burrow through a human skull in thirty seconds — less, if the worm finds easy entry through an eye socket or nasal passage. Once inside the brain casing, the worm implants its ravenous larvae, which thrive and grow as they devour the nutrient-rich tissue around them.

Adult mind worms live for less than a month (explaining their urgent need to reproduce as quickly as possible), although they can enter a dormant state that lasts for years when they are in contact with the xenofungus. They reproduce sexually, but are hermaphroditic — each mind worm is capable of both impregnating another and of producing larvae itself. In particularly harsh environmental circumstances, a mind worm is even capable of impregnating itself. Genetically, one mind worm is virtually indistinguishable from any other anywhere else on Planet, right down to the chromosomal level.

Giant swarms, or “boils,” of these mottled 10cm nightmares occasionally wriggle out of the fungal beds, attacking settlements and their outlying farms and
other enhancements. Victims are paralyzed with terror, and then experience an unimaginably excruciating death as the worms burrow into the brain to implant their ravenous larvae. Only the most disciplined security squads can overcome their fear long enough to trigger the flame guns that can keep the worms at bay.

There is one advantage to destroying a mind worm boil (other than the increased feeling of security). When mind worms combine into boils, their metabolisms change. A few begin building concentrated deposits of rare elements, and when a mind worm boil’s “life” is cut short (for example, when one is flamed), these deposits can be recovered and converted directly into energy stores. The value of these deposits, and their mode of recovery, lead to their informal name — *planetpearls*. Mind worms that naturally dissipate do not leave the “husks” in which planetpearls are found — they are only recoverable if the boil is “killed.”

There are three distinct vectors of the mind worm boils — land, sea and air. The aquatic vector, dubbed *isles of the deep*, appears to form when suboceanic worms come together into a boil. The biochemical processes of the boil itself produce sufficient gas to make the mass buoyant, causing it to rise to the surface. At that point it takes on a life of its own, including apparent independent movement, and even the ability to perceive and pursue particularly attractive food sources (like human vessels and sea colonies). Isles of the deep in shallow coastal waters have been known to spawn land-based boils that break off from the mother mass and proceed on their own cross-country hunts.

The final vector, the air-borne *Locusts of Chiron*, is the strangest. Periodically, a pre-boil mass of mind worms in a xenofungal bloom spontaneously, and for unknown reason, metamorphoses so that they all grow wings, whereupon the worms take off as a boil-swarm. Locusts of Chiron are rare, and “wild” locusts are rarely seen outside of periods of unusual mind worm activity.

There are three current theories regarding the nature of the mind worms’ attack. One depends on biochemistry, suggesting that the species produces some pheromone-like atmospheric chemical which induces hallucinations in
the human brain. A second, more exotic explanation has also been posited, that the worms manipulate electromagnetic radiation to attack. The third theory is that the mind worms are able to manipulate a totally new form of energy — a purely psychoactive waveform capable of interfacing with, and distorting the thoughts of, all self-aware creatures.

PLANT LIFE

The bulk of the biomass of Planet, however, consists of basically earthlike green vegetation — algae, fungi and small plants, the most complex of which can be compared to a terrestrial palm tree. Over most of Planet, this vegetation takes the form of a savanna-like carpet of grass and moss, with the occasional “vine” or small “bush” relieving the monotony. The sole exception to this rule is the Monsoon Jungle, where anomalous green vegetation can reach a height of several dozen meters. Whatever its size, however, the green biomass provides many useful proteins that can be efficiently processed for use by humans as nutrients.

SYMBIOSIS

Despite the most obvious life-forms (xenofungus and mind worms), life on Planet, in general, is neither hostile to humankind nor particularly noteworthy. However, the intricate and sophisticated symbiosis in which nearly every species participates is noteworthy. (In fact, no observed species, whether flora, fauna or otherwise, does not participate in this symbiotic dance.) It is common on Earth for two, or sometimes even three or four species, to engage in a symbiotic relationship. On Planet, the symbiotic network essentially embraces every native species. This network works together with extreme efficiency and produces very little organic residue — everything is used, then reused. Therefore, contrary to planetologists’ expectations, fossil fuels and the like are unknown on Planet.

It is not too great a stretch to suggest that this intricate network has been woven by conscious intent (without attempting to answer the obvious rejoinder, “Whose intent?”).
MOONS

Planet has two moons, Nessus and Pholus, also named after Centaurs. The tidal effects of these two moons were briefly discussed earlier. Here are a few more specifics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Earth’s Moon</th>
<th>Nessus</th>
<th>N/M Ratio</th>
<th>Pholus</th>
<th>P/M Ratio</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mass (kg)</td>
<td>7.35 x 10^22</td>
<td>6.50 x 10^21</td>
<td>0.09</td>
<td>5.20 x 10^20</td>
<td>0.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radius (km)</td>
<td>1740</td>
<td>800</td>
<td>0.46</td>
<td>350</td>
<td>0.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dist. from planet (km)</td>
<td>3.84 x 10^5</td>
<td>2.00 x 10^5</td>
<td>0.52</td>
<td>1.00 x 10^5</td>
<td>0.26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surface area (km^2)</td>
<td>3.80 x 10^7</td>
<td>8.04 x 10^6</td>
<td>0.21</td>
<td>1.54 x 10^6</td>
<td>0.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean gravity (m/s^2)</td>
<td>1.62</td>
<td>0.68</td>
<td>0.42</td>
<td>0.28</td>
<td>0.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Density (kg/m^3)</td>
<td>3342</td>
<td>3031</td>
<td>0.91</td>
<td>2895</td>
<td>0.87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synodic month (Earth days)</td>
<td>29.5</td>
<td>7.7</td>
<td>0.26</td>
<td>2.7</td>
<td>0.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synodic month (local days)</td>
<td>29.5</td>
<td>10.6</td>
<td>ŋ</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>ŋ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synodic months/local yr</td>
<td>12.4</td>
<td>50.2</td>
<td>ŋ</td>
<td>144</td>
<td>ŋ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angular radius (degrees)</td>
<td>0.26</td>
<td>0.23</td>
<td>0.88</td>
<td>0.20</td>
<td>0.77</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

OTHER PLANETS

Alpha Centauri B has been dubbed “Hercules” by the inhabitants of Planet. As myth would have it, Hercules was, as much by fortune as by intent, a great nemesis of the Centaurs. He slew Nessus (for attempting to violate Deianira), Eurytion (for attempting to force a marriage with Dexamenius’ daughter, Mnesimache) and even his former tutor Chiron (by accident, with a poison arrow). Pholus was killed indirectly — by foolishly picking up Hercules’ arrow and dropping it on his toe! Since Alpha Centauri B must either have ejected or prevented the formation of other planets in this system, and could in time be responsible for disrupting the remaining planets, the name is appropriate.

Eurytion (named after one of the Centaurs mentioned above) orbits Alpha Centauri A at about half the radius of Planet. Among the planets orbiting the Sun, Mercury bears the closest similarity to it.
### APPENDIX 5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Eurytion</th>
<th>EarthE/Earth Ratio</th>
<th>MercuryE/Merc Ratio</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mass (kg)</strong></td>
<td>$5.16 \times 10^{23}$</td>
<td>$5.98 \times 10^{24}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Equat. radius (km)</strong></td>
<td>2820</td>
<td>6380</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dist. from star (km)</strong></td>
<td>$7.06 \times 10^{10}$</td>
<td>$1.50 \times 10^{11}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Surface area (km²)</strong></td>
<td>$9.98 \times 10^{7}$</td>
<td>$5.10 \times 10^{8}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Standard gravity (m/s²)</strong></td>
<td>4.33</td>
<td>9.81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Escape velocity (m/s)</strong></td>
<td>4940</td>
<td>11,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Density (kg/m³)</strong></td>
<td>5503</td>
<td>5519</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Size of sun (angular degrees)</strong></td>
<td>0.62</td>
<td>0.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Year (Earth days)</strong></td>
<td>113.8</td>
<td>365.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Surf. temperature (°K)</strong></td>
<td>438</td>
<td>288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Surf. temperature (°C)</strong></td>
<td>165</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Solar constant (W/m²)</strong></td>
<td>8999</td>
<td>1383</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SUGGESTED READING

#### NONFICTION

**ALPHA CENTAURI, THE NEAREST STAR** *Isaac Asimov*

*Lothrop, Lee & Shepard Company, a Division of William Morrow & Company, Inc., New York, 1976*

Published in 1976, by William Morrow & Company (New York), this book is a bit dated but still contains a solid explanation of how we determined Alpha Centauri is the nearest star, plus additional details on the nature and structure of this trinary star system. You’ll have a hard time finding it in a bookstore; you might have better luck with the juvenile section of your nearest library.

**WWW.NASA.GOV**

NASA maintains this website, along with useful links to similar sites. Any of the
dated aspects of Asimov’s book are well addressed at this site. It contains plenty of current statistics and other data, covering much more than just Alpha Centauri (a good place to start might be their search engine, at www.nasa.gov/search/). It also includes an “Ask the Astronomer” question-and-answer forum, plus an archive of previous answers, that can fill you in on just about anything you want to know astronomical (at image.gsfc.nasa.gov/poetry/astro/qanda.html).

PALE BLUE DOT Carl Sagan; Ann Godoff (editor)
Sagan’s clear vision of humanity’s future in space makes this worth reading cover to cover, not to mention the great pictures.

FICTION
Much inspiration for Alpha Centauri came from reading classic works of science fiction. For those interested in reading some great books, Alpha Centauri Designer Brian Reynolds offers the following suggested reading list.

THE JESUS INCIDENT Frank Herbert
A speculative and philosophical tour de force by my favorite science fiction author. You’ll probably have to search used bookstores for this one, but it’s well worth it. My favorite science fiction novel ever. A clear inspiration for the story of Planet.

DUNE Frank Herbert
Herbert’s more famous masterpiece. If you enjoy stories of human factions tearing at each others’ throats, you’ll love this.

A FIRE UPON THE DEEP Vernor Vinge
A far future epic which includes one of the more interesting alien races I’ve encountered as well as some really original future concepts and a surprise ending which brings it all together. Also includes some pretty hilarious parodies of internet newsgroups.
ANVIL OF STARS *Greg Bear*

What if the universe is filled with alien races sometimes even more sinister and diabolical than humanity at its worst? To what depths of deception and atrocity will a species descend in order to secure its survival?

SLANT *Greg Bear*

A near future earth where information technology has continued to make quantum advances. I find suspension of disbelief very easy with Greg Bear, because his worlds are coherent and his characters’ motives are so plausible.

THE MOTE IN GOD’S EYE *Larry Niven and Jerry Pournelle*

The best book I’ve read on the classic “first contact” concept. A really in-depth study of what makes an alien race tick.

THE REAL STORY *Stephen R. Donaldson*

The first in a series of five. Mostly notable for the amount of sleep I lost reading it. Donaldson is the only author I know who can keep me addicted and on the edge of my seat through five straight books.

RED MARS *Kim Stanley Robinson*

The characters can get a little thin, but this is the story on terraforming another world. Extremely well-researched. Hard science fiction at its hardest.

THE YEAR’S BEST SCIENCE FICTION *Ed. Gardner Dozois*

An annual collection. Extremely well-chosen and well-edited. My favorite source of science fiction short stories. I take one with me on summer vacation.
JOURNEY TO CENTAURI (EXCERPT)

The following is an excerpt from the web-based episodic story, *Journey to Centauri*, that appeared on the *Alpha Centauri* website beginning June 1, 1998, written by Michael Ely. Visit the *Alpha Centauri* website at www.alpha-centauri.com to find out more about humanity's journey to the New World.

“Captain.”

Shapes. Shadows, hovering over him. A sense of threat, darkness eclipsing his vision, and the distant sound of warning klaxons. He tried to lift his hands and could not, tried to speak and felt his throat turn to fire. A deep cold pressed down on him, crushing his bones to ice.

“... this one ... hurry!” The voice again.

More movement, seen through layers of frost and glass. I am the Captain, came his next thought, sharp and coherent. I should be first ....

First out of the sleep. Visions returned to him: the long rough cylinder of the ship, floating above the chaos of Earth. The massive cryobays with their rows of sleeping crew, the white-suited cryotechs moving ghostlike among them. His last memory of lying down in glass and feeling the blue tide rise to swallow him, forty years and a moment of darkness ago. Thinking, hoping, that when he woke again, it would be to the sight of Alpha Centauri's primary cresting the rim of a new planet, a new world.

But now ... something was wrong. Someone, unauthorized, moving around the ship. A wave of dizziness washed over him and his vision blurred into a sea of blue, red lights flashing in the distance. He could feel the ship shaking beneath him.

“We move ...”

A shadow passed over him, and then another. Footsteps retreated. He stared up through the curved top of the cryocell, willing himself into the open spaces of the ship, trying to force his fingers to move. His brain signaled alarm but his heart and muscles, held in near stasis, would not respond.
He waited, helpless, while the ship hurled on and the warning klaxons sounded their three beat sequence.

After interminable moments he heard a click and a hiss, and then a storm exploded beneath him.

Transmission Received,
U.N.S. Unity Central Processor.

Impact Detected.
Fusion drive shut down.
Severe Damage Hydroponics Mods 2, 3; cryobay 7.

Triggering automatic wakeup of core staff per coded instructions.

Pravin Lal awakened to the hiss of the transparent capsule door breaking its seal and the feel of the ship’s foundation shaking beneath him. His heart began to pound and he closed his eyes, breathing deeply, seeking calm.

When his heartbeat slowed he opened his eyes once more. His training had prepared him for this: disorientation, sleep sickness, a deep fatigue that seemed to nest in his bones. He spit the respirator from his mouth and pulled the IVs from his arm, then lifted his hands, placed them on the glass lid above, and pushed.

The cryocell opened. He was alive.

Around him stretched the expanse of Cryobay Two, silent and vast, filled with over a thousand identical glass capsules, each one bathed in a pale blue light, each with tubes and cables snaking down to conduits in the floor. Over a thousand crew, but his eyes immediately, reflexively, turned to the cell at his left. He climbed to his feet and, ignoring the chill, crossed to it.

He looked down through the glass. There, beneath the frost and bluish tint of the cryogel, he could make out her soft brown shape, indistinct, and the dark-
ness of her long hair. Pria. She looked so peaceful, so far away ... he still remembered her gentleness, and their last strong kiss before the cryotechs closed the cell, locking her away from him.

His practiced eyes scanned the small console above her cell. Everything appeared normal; she had survived. His eyes flickered once across the manual release key, and then he saw the red warning lights flashing at the far end of the cryobay. The ship ... he had almost forgotten the danger. He brushed Pria’s cell with his fingers one more time and then turned away.

From a metal shelf at the foot of his vacated cell he lifted a folded uniform ... sleek, comfortable, in the sky blue of the mission’s Chief of Surgery, with the U.N. seal on the breast and no country-of-origin markings visible. The Captain had lobbied strongly for that.

He slipped into the uniform and flipped on the small computer sewn into the uniform’s sleeve. Status report: the Captain would emerge from cryosleep shortly, along with other core officers and some emergency support staff. It appeared that large portions of the ship’s hull had been damaged, along with two of the three hydroponics modules. The fusion drive had shut down.

Pravin entered the Returned to Duty code and headed for the command bay. The ship was racing towards Centauri system at tremendous speed, and without the fusion drive there was no way to stop.

Log Entry Received,
Pravin Lal, Chief of Surgery.

I have awakened to find the mission in jeopardy. I go now to join my Captain in the command bay, ready to learn what has gone awry.

I pray the integrity of the ship’s datacore remains true. It is the last hope of humankind...all of our knowledge digitized for transit to the new world. If Earth has not survived these last 40 years, then our future lies in the heart of this damaged ship.
The lid to his cryocell hissed open, and Sheng-ji Yang emerged into darkness and immediate danger. From the shadows surrounding his cell peered the narrow deadly eyes of shredder pistols, their barrels leveled directly at him.

Sheng-ji stood calmly, using his hand against the cryocell to steady himself as waves of post-sleep nausea washed over him. *No weakness* ... his eyes flickered in the darkness, marking the position of every enemy. He could not see their faces ... the main lights in this bay appeared to be malfunctioning, or shut down, and he could see only the other cryocells with their soft blue glow, like phosphorescent flowers in a field of darkness.

He willed his muscles to relax with exquisite control. His eyes flickered, just once, across the black metal lockbox on the shelf at the foot of his cryocell. He wouldn’t betray his intentions by looking at the box again, but in his mind he carefully reconstructed the exact positioning of the box on the shelf, its exact height from the floor and the position of the softly glowing shape of the digital print lock. The lockbox carried his personal arsenal: his shredder pistol, a submission rod and several sets of organic restraints.

“Move away from the cell. Follow the exact path we have laid for you.” came a harsh, gravelly voice from a knot of shadows only two cells away. He looked down to see small glowing blue dots on the floor leading away from his cryocell. *Why?*

“On whose orders?” he asked, his throat husky from disuse ... *let the games begin.*

“Do not answer him,” came a soft, steely voice from a position, amazingly, even closer than the other, a peculiar dark knot of shadows barely an arm’s length away. A chill crossed him, briefly ... that this person dared to crouch so close to him. He read the shadows quickly, making out a silhouette. The shadow ... this person ... waited with catlike alertness, spine taut as a wire. *Who?*

“Do not answer this man,” the voice continued. “You are forbidden to speak to him. And, Doctor Yang, do not speak to them. Simply follow the path we have laid out for you.”

“Am I to ...”
Suddenly the shadow exploded into motion, and a black serpent crossed the distance to Yang in a heartbeat. Yang felt red hot wires of pain lace his neck, and he fell to his knees, cursing the post-sleep weakness that dulled his reflexes.

Psych-whip, a part of him thought calmly. They have been in the armory. And then he smiled as the pain intensified ... he welcomed it, opened himself to it, letting it dance on his nerves and dissolve into his spine. Pain, awaken me ....

“We mean you no immediate harm, but I know of your special talents. You must follow my instructions. Do not speak. Crawl along the blue lines.”

He looked at the blue dots on the floor, his head still swimming. His eyes flickered up to one corner of the room, a zone of darkness with the vague sense of a metal bulkhead curving. In that darkness he could imagine the bland silvery eye of the security camera staring down at him, but it could not see into the far corner, where the blue dots led.

He felt the muscles tighten along his back. He felt the cool metal floor beneath his hands.

Abruptly, he stood. Electric tension jolted across the room as shredder pistols twitched to follow him. He could smell the uncertainty ... should we fire? ... and it had the metallic tang of fear.

He took one slow pace along the blue dots, shuffling as if from fatigue, and then every muscle in his body exploded backward toward his cryocell as a yell from the bottom of his lungs split the darkness. One roll and he reached back over his head to take the black metal lockbox into his hands ... no wasted motion, no wasted time. He had already seen the action in his mind. And then ...

... no turning back, but instead he went up and over his cryocell, the blue light illuminating him for just a moment. A burst of shredder pistol fire crossed the darkness, humming in a cloud all around him, liquefying the glass beneath his feet, and as he leapt he felt the sharp stinging pain of the psyche whip on his back.

A wave of nausea overtook him and instead of fighting it he used it, followed it down, his body spiraling drunkenly into the space behind his cryocell. He
could feel the confusion in the room as shadows lurched forward, orders issued in hisses. No shouts and no further fire ... near perfect silence, he thought. Amazing discipline, as if ....

No matter. He had moments, and moments were all he needed. Crouched in the darkness he punched the release code into his lockbox. He flexed his hands, deadly weapons in their own right, serpents awaiting their venom.

The box would not open. It remained inert, a block of dead cold metal in his hands. He turned it quickly face up, tried to make out the letters printed on top. “A. Shaw.” They had switched lockboxes on him.

A shadowy form rose above him, and he caught a sliver of blue light across familiar features.

“You ...” he said, wanting to buy time.

A dark metal shape crashed into him, and his vision burst into blue fireworks on a night black sky.

From the Unity Library,

Doctor Yang’s Collection:

Weapons are the tools of fear;
a decent man will avoid them
except in direst necessity
and, if compelled, will use them
only with the utmost restraint.

He enters a battle gravely,
with sorrow and with great compassion,
as if he were attending a funeral.

Tao Te Ching,
Steven Mitchell trans.
DESIGNER’S NOTES

Although this is our second product as a company, *Alpha Centauri* has been around, in some form or another, right from the humble beginnings of FIRAXIS Games. Its story has in many ways paralleled the story of our company — FIRAXIS and *Alpha Centauri* grew together, both changing and evolving over two and a half years. Both faced significant setbacks and periods of self-doubt, but in the end FIRAXIS came together as a company, and as you have hopefully discovered, *Alpha Centauri* came together as one of our best games ever.

In July 1996, the brand new FIRAXIS Games (at the time we were calling it “FIRAXIS Software”) consisted of four or five people huddled in some borrowed office space in the back of the Absolute Quality building in Hunt Valley, MD. AQ, a professional game testing company, was also a brand new startup, so times were exciting, to say the least. Yes, the rumors are true: we did in fact buy AQ a phone system and bartered it for their spare office space.

CEO Jeff Briggs worked the phones to rustle up some funding and did all the hard work of actually putting a new company together. Sid Meier and Brian Reynolds worked to scrape together some playable prototype code, and Jason Coleman wrote the first lines of JACKAL, the engine which these days pretty much holds everything together. Office Manager Susan Brookins found us some office furniture and bought crates of Coke, Sprite and Dr. Pepper to stash in a mini-fridge Brian had saved from his college days. We remembered that at some indeterminate point in the past we were considered world class game designers, but our day-to-day lives weren’t providing us a lot of positive reinforcement on that point. So for the first nine months of our existence as a company, we clunked over the railroad tracks in the morning, played *Spy Hunter* in the upstairs kitchen, and declared “work at home” days when AQ had competitors in the office.

1996, you may recall, was also the “Year Of The Real Time Strategy Game.” Giants strode the industry and remade it in their image. Indeed, our first offering as a company, *Sid Meier’s Gettysburg*, is enthusiastically real time, and if
you like real time games at all and haven’t tried it yet you owe it to yourself to
go and find a copy — Sid considers it one of the two best games he’s ever
designed, and the rest of us are inclined to agree. But we were also convinced
that in spite of the industry’s headlong rush to get on the real time bandwag-
on, a strong market still existed for turn-based strategy games. Gamers wanted
a new, sweeping epic of a turn-based game, and they wanted us to design it.

At that time, science fiction games were definitely not the first thing that
came to mind when you thought about our team. We were known for histo-
ry-based games. We knew a lot about history and historical games and pretty
much left the science fiction and fantasy to everyone else. But we’d just done
an epic game based on all of human history up to present times and needed
a fresh topic, so at some point someone said “well, how about a future histo-
ry” — human history from the near to the distant future. Kind of a way to
bring our strength with historical games to bear on a science fiction game.

From the beginning, Alpha Centauri set out to capture the whole sweep of
humanity’s future. Not just technology and futuristic warfare, but social and
economic development, the future of the human condition, spirituality and
philosophy. One challenge we quickly discovered is that whereas most people
are at least roughly familiar with the major events of human history, and can
easily relate to archetypes like “fire,” “nomadic hordes” and “the wheel,” they
haven’t got the foggiest notion of what “Polymorphic Software” might be,
since we just made the name up five minutes ago. It takes a lot of work to
weave a tapestry of future history which both coheres and makes the future
accessible to players.

Since it is, after all, the future we’re talking about, we’ve tried to be extraordi-
narily flexible in allowing many different possible strategies and different kinds
of victory. Whereas we can, for instance, look back on the past and say “well
obviously that system of government worked and that one didn’t,” it’s a lot
harder to make cogent predictions about future society. We don’t even know
what future governments will be like, let alone whether or not they will work.
So in our Social Engineering section we’ve tried to challenge players to imag-
ine the future for themselves — to create their own future utopias and try them out against other competing visions. Thence also came the idea of “factions,” rival groups to challenge players with opposing and contrasting ideologies.

Thrown into this mix are the uniquely science fiction elements of exploring and terraforming an alien world. Since we were trying to create a plausible future history, trans-lightspeed galactic travel seemed a bit unrealistic. We chose instead to start with a near future situation which with only a little extra optimism could actually happen — a human mission to colonize the solar system of our sun’s nearest neighbor. It seemed likewise implausible that upon arriving in the Alpha Centauri system humans would discover a thriving community of five or six intelligent quasi-humanoid alien races, so we stuck with human factions to provide rivals and opponents. But alien ecologies and mysterious intelligences are cool, so we’ve incorporated them into the game as external “natural forces” which serves as a flywheel for much of our back-story and a catalyst for many player actions.

With Gettysburg taking up most of our time, we spent Alpha Centauri’s first year working up a prototype of basic ideas. Artist Mike Bazzell provided enough preliminary art to get us going, senior programmer Jason Coleman perfected our system code, and lead designer Brian Reynolds hacked a game and some AI together. Sid had a spare fractal algorithm he wasn’t going to need for Gettysburg, so Brian took it up to Canada for vacation and finished the world generator on the shores of the St. Lawrence. We were playing “games” of Alpha Centauri by fall of ’96, and by the following summer we were working on the multiplayer engine. We invited veteran game designer Doug Kaufman, with whom we’ve often worked, to join us as a game balancer and become “the first man on Alpha Centauri.” You’ll find Doug’s ideas well represented throughout the game (the disengage rule, long range bombardment, and energy loans, to name just a few), and he’s the guy you can thank when you try some bizarre new strategy and lo-and-behold the game understands it.

Around this time we also began doing some research on the scientific realities involved in interstellar travel. A few tentative posts on the Internet later, we
made the acquaintance of Derek “Del” Cotter, a British fan who proved so helpful in setting us straight on astronomy, biology and interstellar travel that we sent him a contract and hired him to do some research. Del provided the technical design for our starship, the U.N.S. Unity; designed planets and solar system consistent with current knowledge of the Alpha Centauri system; figured out Planet’s vital statistics; and fleshed out our biosphere. Del’s interstellar travel research was particularly useful for our web story, which Mike Ely wrote and which appeared in installments on our website during the final months of development. Del even provided some biochemical theories about how the fungus and mind worms might work and generally made it possible for us to do a near future space colonization game without sounding like idiots.

Now skip ahead to late 1997. Alpha Centauri was still plodding along, but the schedule was starting to slip and most who played it at the time agreed that it lacked that certain je ne sais quoi which makes a game stand out as a classic. Enter Bing Gordon, an industry veteran who co-founded Electronic Arts way back when your humble game designer was just starting high school (you mean he’s one of the guys who brought out Archon?! Cool!) and who lately serves as its Chief Creative Officer. A long time fan of, um, that other game we wrote, he was excited about working with us on our new project. He saw in Alpha Centauri a masterpiece struggling to get out. Bing helped us figure out what was needed to make this the cool thing we all knew it could be. In addition to the fact that we didn’t throw the whole game out the window in disgust, you can thank Bing for the Planetary Council and all the extra time we spent making the diplomacy cool. Bing also convinced us to take multiplayer seriously as a design challenge as well as a technical hurdle.

A few months before the 1998 E3, the gaming industry’s biggest trade show, it was time to get our marketing plan up to speed. Lindsay Riehl, our one-woman marketing department, quickly got this under control, kept the press interested in our progress, and generally helped spread the good news. It was Lindsay who talked us into including Explore/Discover/Build/Conquer in the game as well as the ad campaign, so that what began as a cool marketing tie-in ended up becoming a way to refocus our “Governor” automation (which had previously
been intended mainly for advanced players) as a useful learning tool for beginners. Later, Lindsay arranged to fly out EA’s marketing team for several days of hands-on play, in a devious, underhanded and ultimately completely successful ploy to hook them on the game and remake them as *Alpha Centauri* evangelists. Many thanks to Alex Carllos, Chris Plummer, Matt Orlich, Audrey Meehan and David Swofford for all the hard work they’ve put in, and most especially for taking the time to come out and really get to know us and our product.

*Alpha Centauri* showed well at E3, so it was time to buckle down and get this bad boy finished. How Jason “90-hour week” Coleman and Artist Dave “I’m very afraid” Inscore made it through the summer and autumn of ’98 is anybody’s guess, but in the end they proved to us that a Sid Meier game can have an interface as polished and integrated as anything in the industry. Producer Tim Train took on the near impossible task of keeping track of what everyone was doing and making a (gasp) schedule, meanwhile coordinating the game manual and foreign language translations and moonlighting as co-designer. On top of all that Tim somehow found time to become our office *Alpha Centauri* champion and provide innumerable good pointers on game tactics for us to include in the AI. When a computer player amasses an overwhelming force and *then* moves up to attack your bases, think of Tim.

Art Director Michael Haire developed some concept sketches for our faction leaders, and Jerome Atherholt painted those beautiful portraits which brought them to life as individuals. Believe me there were a lot of people hovering around his office door the day he was working on Deirdre (by the way, that’s pronounced “DEE druh.” Got it? Now say it again ten times). He also dug up and/or manufactured all of those dossier photos, and most importantly took on the scary task of designing the final look of Planet itself, drawing all of our terrain, solar collectors, boreholes and so forth. We discovered that everyone had a strong (and different) opinion on what Planet ought to look like (More red! Less red! More detail! Less detail!), and finally one day Executive Producer Jeff Briggs threw us all out and said “Okay, go home. This weekend Jerome is going to draw the terrain, and when he’s done you can all *look* at it.” You done good, Jerome.
Mike Bazzell, in addition to doing pretty much all of our prototype art and having by far the scariest office at FIRAXIS, built all of those cool vehicles and vehicle parts. Imagine being told you have to design a laser cannon that looks just as cool on a hovertank as on a needlejet or a cruiser, or carried around by some infantry guys. And everything has to fit together interchangeably. And rotate! And move in 3-D! But after years of playing with little “sprite guys,” it sure is great to watch those needlejets make bank turns. Mike is also responsible for all of our on-screen animations, explosions and so forth.

Meanwhile, Mike Ely directed our Secret Projects movies, coming up with a coherent vision, doing storyboards, figuring out which movies needed licensed footage and which we should develop in-house, and working with the artists to bring Planet to life cinematically. Mike made all of the “footage” movies himself, and edited together the final cuts of all the movies. For the 3-D movies, Nick Rusko-Berger was our principal movie man, creating our Opening and Transcendence sequences as well as many of the Secret Projects, such as the Bulk Matter Transmitter. But many of our other artists were heavily involved in movie making as well — Greg Foertsch’s movies included the Space Elevator and Hunter-Seeker Algorithm; Dave Inscore created the Command Nexus and Maritime Control Center; and Jerome Atherholt painted the backgrounds for the Citizens’ Defense Force.

Music for our movies was composed by Jeff Briggs, our versatile CEO, Executive Producer, Designer and Composer. Dave “Mr. Sound Guy” Evans, our digital sound wizard and mandolin maestro, masterminded our in-game music and did pretty much everything else that involves sound and sound effects. Dave wrote what we suspect may be the first true interactive midi/pcm engine ever to ship with a computer game. He had the fun of going to a sound workshop where everyone was talking about interactive midi as something “a few years down the road” and thinking “heh heh, I’ve already done that.” Dave also came up with some literally unspeakable technology to let us support true voice-to-voice transmissions during multiplayer games. Meanwhile, Mike Ely went through unending grueling casting sessions to find us seven faction leaders with good voices, acting skills, and authentic accents. Want to make Mike wince? Just sing a few bars of the “Deirdre’s got a Network Node” song.
Much still remained to be polished. Art Director Michael Haire designed the faction icons and created individual icons for each of our many technologies, facilities and secret projects. Michael also did many of our scoring screens, as well as prototyping much of our interface. Greg Foertsch created our “monument” reward screen, and did much of our situational payoff art. And while all this was going on, a college senior and mathematics major walked into his career counselor’s office and said that what he really wanted to do with his life was “work for a company called FIRAXIS Games.” And that’s how Chris Pine came to FIRAXIS. Chris did all the report screens on the HQ Menu, and we have to say we had no idea how cool report screens could be until Chris joined us. Now if he’d just give up this “Go” business and learn to play Chess like a normal Firaxian!

With Alpha Centauri pulling into the home stretch, Jeff Morris, our Quality Assurance Director, kicked into high gear. Somehow Jeff managed to coordinate testing between three different groups plus FIRAXIS itself, keep our networks running, and still find time to write our install program. Our old sister company, Absolute Quality, with whom we shared office space for so long, handled the on-site testing, and we must say that Dan Schlueter and his team did an excellent job finding the serious problems in our software. Dan, along with colleagues Jim Smith, Ted Paulsen, Graham Boyanich, Ray Lofton and Charles Brubaker, stayed on top of things and helped us get the multiplayer code stable in record time. Origin also contributed Rhea Shelley’s test team, which did a most thorough job of combing through the software for the things that are so easy to miss. Thanks!

We’d also like to thank profusely the 25 hardy volunteers who participated in our public beta test. Particularly considering that their only pay consisted of buggy early versions of the game, their enthusiasm and participation was outstanding. We’d never done a public beta test before, but let me tell you we’re sold on the idea now, since doing one gave us a perspective on our product we could never have obtained in any other way. Among many other useful suggestions, our beta testers insisted that we add Diplomatic and Economic victories, and yes, even the dreaded Random Events. Thanks to everyone who participated — you really made a difference.
Two and a half years is a long time to work on a project, and many changes have taken place in that time. Amanda Rusko-Berger, Coulby Riehl and Caleb Reynolds were all born during the project. Susan Brookins, who kept us fed and paid and made sure the Gatorade man filled up our machine every week, is now Susan Meier (yes, that Meier). The FIRAXIS staff has grown to a whopping 17, and we’ve got a pretty good view now from the top floor of the Executive Plaza building in Hunt Valley. We’re a better team, a happier team, and definitely a wiser team than we were when we started the project. The nest is going to seem a little empty with Alpha Centauri gone, but fortunately we’ve got two outstanding ideas in the works, and maybe even a few after that, so it looks like we’ll stay busy for quite a while.

Before we close, we’d like to stop and briefly reflect on the deeper message that Alpha Centauri hopes to convey. In the closing years of the twentieth century, humanity stands capable of technological achievements which were never possible in any previous era and which as far as we know may never have been available to any sentient species, ever. The time of miracles is indeed upon us, and yet the nuclear trigger remains armed, population growth continues to overwhelm available resources, our climate shows early signs of running amok, and sooner or later a near-Earth asteroid will probably wipe civilization or even humanity itself from the face of the planet. As a basket in which to keep all our eggs, Earth is more precarious than ever, yet we continue to dilly and dally and just this week Time magazine ran an article calling the International Space Station “a white elephant” that is not worth the money.

Are we content to stew in our collective juices, to turn inward as our planet runs inexorably out of resources and wait for the Universe (or perhaps our next-door neighbors) to grow tired of us and wipe us out? Or shall we claim the planets and stars, distribute our eggs among many baskets, ensure the long-term survival of our species, and in the process embark on the greatest adventure of all time? Mars could be reached within our own lifetimes: manned exploration missions, even colonies, all for a minute fraction of what we spend every year building weapons. The planets lie nearly within reach of
current technology, and even a trip to Alpha Centauri is easier than you probably think. Consider Planet’s final imperative at the Ascent to Transcendence: bright children of the stars. We can probably eventually do even that if we put our minds to it — what a thought! The stars are waiting for us; we have only to decide that it’s worth the effort to go there. Look at the stars on a cold, clear, winter night and think about that. If *Alpha Centauri* inspires a few young scientists and astronauts; if it convinces a few more citizens to write to their congressmen and work to rejuvenate our space program, humanity’s space program, that will surely be its greatest and most lasting accomplishment.

And so to end our valedictory, we’d like to thank Sid for all his sage advice; Jeff Briggs for thinking that starting a little company called FIRAXIS might actually be a good idea; Jill Reynolds, Holly Coleman, Yvette Bazzell and all the other FIRAXIS wives and families for enduring 80-hour weeks for longer than anyone should have to endure them; our publisher for bearing with us; and all the others, too numerous to name individually, for working to help make this game great. Thank you, thank you very much. Most of all, we’d like to thank all of our fans, who in the end make all of this possible. As always, we hope you enjoy playing *Alpha Centauri* as much as we enjoyed creating it. Walk with Planet!

Brian Reynolds
Hunt Valley, MD
November 23, 1998
CREDS

Created By ......................... Brian Reynolds
With ....................... Sid Meier, Timothy Train, Douglas Kaufman, Bing Gordon
And ......................... Members of FIRAXIS Games
Executive Producer .............. Jeffery L. Briggs
Producer ............................ Timothy Train
System/Interface Programming ..... Jason Coleman
Sound Engineering/Programming ... David Evans
Additional Programming . . . Chris Pine, Jeff Morris
Art Director ......................... Michael Haire (Icons, Scoring)
Graphic Artists Jerome Atherholt (Portraits, Terrain), Michael Bazzell (3-D Units, Prototyping), Gregory Foertsch (Payoffs, Movies), David Inscore (Interface, Planetscapes), Nicholas Rusko-Berger (Movies, Opening)
Movies and Voices Directed by .... Michael Ely
Featuring the Voices Of:
   Lady Deirdre Skye ................. Carolyn Dahl
   Chairman Sheng-Ji Yang ........... Lu Yu
   Academician Prokhor Zakharov . Yuri Nesteroff
   CEO Nwabudike Morgan .......... Regi Davis
   Colonel Corazon Santiago ........ Wanda Nino
   Sister Miriam Godwinson . . . . Gretchen Weigel
   Commissioner Pravin Lal ........ Hesh Gordon
   Planet ......................... Alena Kanka
   Datalinks, Male .................. Robert Levy
   Datalinks, Female ............... Katherine Ferguson

Background Music .............. David Evans, Jeffery L. Briggs
Movie Music ....................... Jeffery L. Briggs
Director Of Marketing ............. Lindsay Riehl
Master Of Miscellaneous ............ Susan Meier
Webmaster .......................... Michael Ely
Astronomy, Physics & Biology Research Derek Cotter
Intern Coordinator ................. Deborah Briggs
Interns ......................... Alex Luskin (Sound Engineering)
   Kurt Kotula (Graphic Art), Matt Pierce (Marketing)

Stock Footage Courtesy Of . . . . Archive Films, Corbis, The Image Bank, WPA Film Library
“The Dancing Baby” is used with the permission of Kinetix, a division of Autodesk, inc.
With Special Thanks To Jill, Ro and Caleb Reynolds
Published By ....................... Electronic Arts

ELECTRONIC ARTS

EA Godfather ...................... Bing Gordon
EA Executive Producer ............ Andy Hollis
EA Producer ........................ Bryan Walker
VP Marketing ........................ Alex Carlss
Director Of Marketing ............... Chris Plummer
Product Manager .................... Matt Orlich
European Product Manager ........ Audrey Meehan
Media Relations Manager ........... David Swofford
EA Quality Assurance: ............ Benjamin Crick,
   Daniel Hiatt, Michael Jung, Etienne
   Grunenwald, Anatol Somerville, Bobby Joe

QUALITY ASSURANCE

Quality Assurance Director Jeff Morris, FIRAXIS Games
Absolute Quality, Inc. Dan Schlueter, AQ Lead Tester
   Graham Boyanich, Charles Brubaker,
   Ray Lofton, Ted Paulsen, Jim Smith
Origin Systems, Inc.:
   Rhea “Shalom” Shelley, OSI Project Leader
   Todd “Balls” Raffray, OSI Assistant Project Leader,
   Tim “Quasimodo” Bell, Brett “Beaker” Bonner,
   Stacy “Skyline” Davidson, Zafer “Z-man” Hamza,
   Kent “Hand” Raffray, Jon “Punchy” Shelus,
   Stephen “Money Shot” VanWambeck
BETA TESTERS
Marty Bishop, Michael Buccheri, Ted Dennison,
Chris Fitzgerald, Neil Fradkin, Andrew Goldstein,
Ronald Gretz, Dick Knisely, Greg Lary, Martin
Leuschen, Jen MacLean, Jean McGuire, Biju
Mathai, Sam May, Laralyn McWilliams, Vernon
Michael, Mark Norton, George Politis, Alan
Precourt, Marc Reissig, Don Rinker, Jennifer
Schlickbernd, Dan Speicher, William Stapel,
Thomas Stobie, Jeff Vitous, Rita Waller

ADDITIONAL CREDITS
Documentation Written by . . .Incan Monkey God
. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .Studios (IMGS, Inc.)

Need Technical Support? Please see the enclosed
Install Guide for technical support information.
NOTICE Electronic Arts reserves the right to make
improvements in the product described in this manual at any time and without notice.
This manual and the software described in this manual are copyrighted. All rights are reserved. No part of
this manual or the described software may be copied,
reproduced, translated, or reduced to any electronic
medium or machine-readable form without the prior
written consent of Electronic Arts, P.O. Box 9025,
Redwood City, California
94063-9025, Attn:
Customer Support.

Manual Writer . . . . . . . . . . . . . .Chris McCubbin
Manual Editors . . .David Ladyman, Jamie Poolos,
. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .Benjamin Crick
Manual Design & Layout . . . . .Catherine Cantieri
Documentation Project Manager . . . .Tonda Mueller
Tech Tree Poster Design . . . . . . . . . .Mike Lippert
Package Design . . .Hamagami/Carroll & Associates
Packaging Art Direction . . . . . . .Nancy Waisanen
French Translation Manager . . .Jean-Luc Chabrier
French Translators Nathalie Marlier (www.apex.fr),
Jean-Claude Ducerf (www.ducerftranslations.com),
. . . . . . . . .Elizabeth Joffrain, Patrice Madesclaire
French Audio Knockin’Boots Productions, Paris/France
German Translation Manager . .Christina Vollmer
German Translators . . . . . . . . . . . . .Frank Dietz,
. . . . . . . . .Christoph Niedermair, Susanne vanEyl
German Audio . . .M&S Sound, Frankfurt/Germany
Spanish Product Manager . . . . . . . . .Teo Alcorta
Spanish Localization Manager . . .Julio Valladares
Spanish Localization .José Luis Rovira, Luis Pinés,
. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .Ricardo Mart’nez
Spanish Quality Assurance . . . . . . .Alvaro Corral,
. . . . . . . . . . . . . . .Antonio López, Oscar Jiménez

MPEG real-time libraries (c)1996-1998 by MpegTV.
All rights reserved. The MPEG Layer-3 technology
was developed by the Fraunhofer Institut fuer
For the latest information on MPEG Layer-3 and
other audio technology products, access:
http://www.iis.fhg.de/audio/.
Electronic Arts and the Electronic Arts logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Electronic Arts in
the U.S. and/or other countries. All rights reserved.
Firaxis and Sid Meier’s Alpha Centauri are trademarks
or registered trademarks of Firaxis Games, Inc. in the
U.S. and/or other countries. All rights reserved.
Windows and DirectX are trademarks or registered
trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.
and/or other countries. All rights reserved.
All other trademarks are property of their respective
owners.
Software and documentation ©1999 Electronic Arts.
All rights reserved.

Italian Translation . . . .C.T.O. S.p.a., Bologna/Italy
European Audio Manager . . . . . . . . .David Lapp

C R E D I T S

247


**MAP COMMANDS**

Move units/View map .......................... V
Zoom in ........................................ Z
Zoom out ....................................... X
Standard zoom in ................................ Shift Z
Standard zoom out .............................. Shift X

**UNIT ACTION COMMANDS**

Construct Base (Colony Pod) ............... B
Join Base (Colony Pod) ...................... B
Obliterate Base (Any Unit in Base) .......... B
Long Range Fire ............................... F
Airdrop .......................................... I
Activate Special Ability ................... I
Psi Gate .............................. Shift I
Convoy Resources ............................. O
Destroy Enhancements ...................... D
Disband Unit ................................. Shift D
Automate Unit ............................... Shift A
Explore Automatically ..................... /
Patrol ........................................... P
Designate Bombing Run .................... B
Automate Air Defense ....................... Ctrl Shift B
Go to Base... ................................. G

Full zoom in ................................. Ctrl Z
Full zoom out ............................... Ctrl X
Toggle flattened terrain .................... Ctrl Shift X
Toggle map & Grid .......................... Ctrl G
Toggle base grid ............................ Ctrl Shift G

Group go to... ............................... J
Assemble Group .............................. Shift J
Go to Home Base ............................. Shift G
Set Home Base ............................... Ctrl H
Activate (Move Now) ....................... A
Wait (Move Later) ............................ W
Unload Transport ............................ Shift U
Upgrade Unit ................................. Ctrl U
Turn Over Unit Control ..................... Ctrl Shift U
Designate Defender ......................... Ctrl D
Sentry/Board Transport .................... L
Place Unit “On Alert” ....................... Shift L
Hold 10 Turns ............................... Shift H
Hold This Position ......................... H
Skip Turn ..................................... Spacebar
**MAP COMMANDS contd.**

Show autoforward routes .................. Ctrl Shift B
Show patrol orders ....................... Shift P
Terrain Survey ........................... T
Hide/Show Names & Production .......... Ctrl N
Name Landmark .......................... Shift N
Erase Landmark .......................... Ctrl Shift N
Locate Base... .......................... Ctrl B
Previous Cursor Position ............... Bksp
Next Cursor Position .................... Shift Bksp
Center screen .......................... C

**TERRAFORM COMMANDS**

Cultivate Farm\Kelp Farm ............... F
Construct Soil Enricher (Over Farm) ... F
Construct Mine\Mining Platform ........ M
Construct Solar Collector\Tidal Harness S
Plant Forest ............................. Shift F
Build Road ............................... R
Build Mag Tube (Over Road) .......... R
Construct Bunker ........................ K
Construct Airbase ........................
Construct Sensor Array .................. O
Remove Fungus ........................... F
Plant Fungus ............................. Ctrl F
Construct Condenser .................... N
Construct Echelon Mirror ............... Shift E
Construct Thermal Borehole .......... Shift B
Drill to Aquifer ........................ Q
Terraform UP ............................
Terraform DOWN .........................
Terraform LEVEL ........................
Farm+Solar+Road ......................... Ctrl Shift F
Farm+Mine+Road ......................... Ctrl Shift M
Construct Road To ........................ Ctrl R
Construct Tube To ........................ Ctrl T
Automatic Roads ......................... Ctrl Shift R
Automatic Tubes ......................... Ctrl Shift T
Automatic Sensors ....................... Ctrl Shift O
Automatic Fungus Removal ............ Ctrl Shift F
Autoimprove Home Base ................. Ctrl Shift A
Fully Automate Former ................. Shift A
### GAME COMMANDS

- Switch To Detailed Menus ... [F11]
- Switch To Simple Menus ... [F11]
- Preferences... ... [Ctrl P]
- Warning Preferences... ... [Ctrl W]
- Advanced Preferences... ... [Ctrl O]
- Automation Preferences... ... [Ctrl A]
- Audio/Visual Preferences... ... [Ctrl I]
- Map Display Preferences... ... [Ctrl M]
- Save Game... ... [Ctrl S]
- Load Game... ... [Ctrl L]
- Resign ... ... [Shift Q]
- Start New Game ... [Ctrl Shift Q]
- Quit ... ... [Ctrl Q]
- Speed Up Game during AI turn ... Hold [Shift]

### MULTIPLAYER GAME COMMANDS

- Chat ... ... [Ctrl C]
- Voice Transmission ... \ (hold)
- Pause ... ... [Bksp]
- Alter Time Controls ... [Shift T]
- Zoom to Base Messages ... *
- Use Time Bonus ... [Ctrl Spacebar]
- End Turn ... ... [Ctrl Enter]
- Resume Turn ... ... [Ctrl Enter]

### BASE COMMANDS

- Social Engineering... ... [E]
- Set Research Priorities... ... [Ctrl R]
- Change Research Goal... ... [Shift R]
- Design Workshop... ... [U]
- Datalinks... ... [F1]
- Laboratories Status... ... [F2]
- Energy Banks... ... [F3]
- Base Operations Status... ... [F4]
- Secret Project Data... ... [F5]
- Orbital and Space Status... ... [F6]
- Military Command Nexus... ... [F7]
- Alpha Centauri Score... ... [F8]
- View Monuments... ... [F9]
- View Hall of Fame... ... [F10]
- Communications and Protocol... [F12]
- Corner Global Energy Market! ... ,
- Review Scenario Objectives ... =